
Contents

Introduction	2
Keys, Doors, and Windows	7
Seats and Restraints	26
Storage	53
Instruments and Controls	61
Lighting	91
Infotainment System	98
Climate Controls	195
Driving and Operating	202
Vehicle Care	252
Service and Maintenance	303
Technical Data	307
Customer Information	328
Index	330

2 Introduction

Introduction

Vehicle Data Chart

Fuel

Engine oil

Tyre pressure

Weights

Designation

Grade

Viscosity

Tyre size

Front

Rear

Gross vehicle weight rating

- Kerb weight, basic model

= Loading

Vehicle Specific Data

Please enter your vehicle data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible. This information is available in the sections "Service and Maintenance" and "Technical data" as well as on the identification plate.

Introduction

Your vehicle was designed using a combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury, which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner Manual.

All Chevrolet dealers provide first-class service, using mechanics that work according to specific instructions.

Keep the owner's manual inside the glovebox for reference.



Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model**


variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.

- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner Manual is for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner Manual uses the factory designations, which can be found in the chapter "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- The vehicle display screens may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labeling are written in **bold** letters.


4 Introduction

Danger, Warning, and Caution

Danger

Text marked  **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.


Warning

Text marked  **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

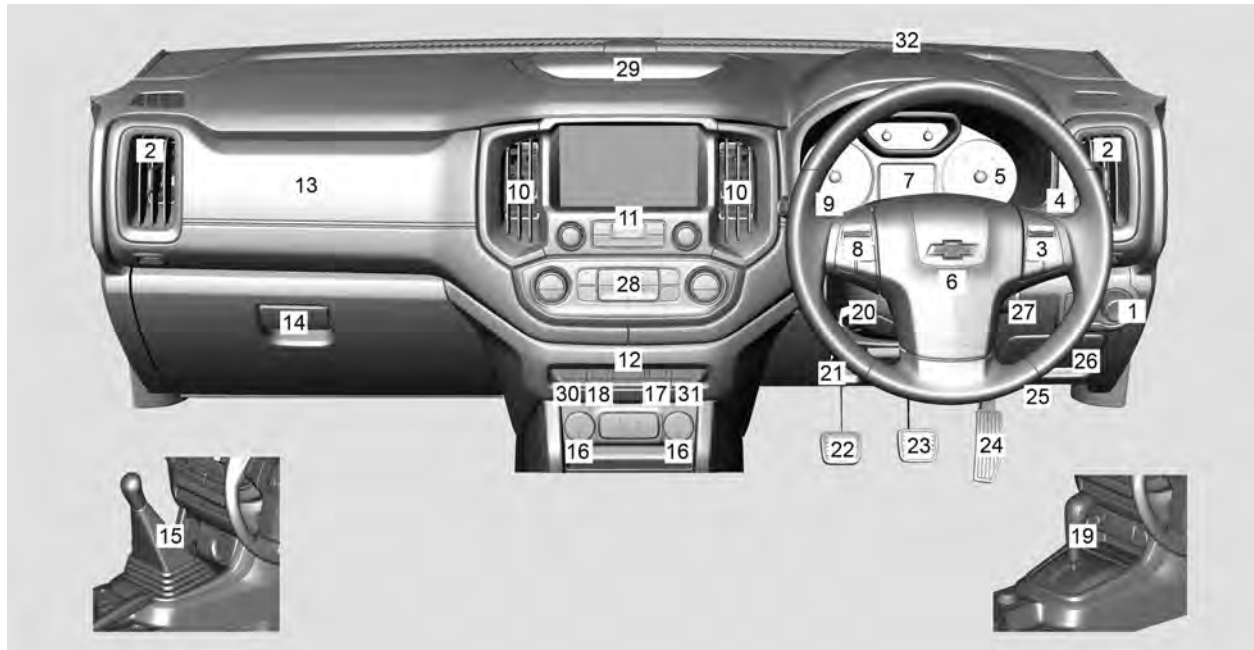
Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with
 means "see page".

Instrument Panel Overview



6 Introduction

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. <i>Exterior Lamp Controls</i> ⇨ 91 | 10. Central Air Vents.
<i>See Adjustable Air Vents</i> ⇨ 200 | 23. Brake Pedal. <i>See Control of a Vehicle</i> ⇨ 204 |
| 2. Side Air Vents. <i>See Adjustable Air Vents</i> ⇨ 200 | 11. Radio Controls and Display.
<i>See Overview</i> ⇨ 99 | 24. Throttle Pedal. <i>See Control of a Vehicle</i> ⇨ 204 |
| 3. <i>Steering Wheel Controls</i> ⇨ 65 | 12. <i>Hazard Warning Flashers</i> ⇨ 94 | 25. Fuel Tank Flap Release Lever.
<i>See Filling the Tank</i> ⇨ 243 |
| 4. <i>Turn and Lane-Change Signals</i> ⇨ 94 | 13. Passenger Airbag. <i>See Front Airbag System</i> ⇨ 37 | 26. <i>Instrument Panel Fuse Block</i> ⇨ 275 |
| <i>Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer</i> ⇨ 92 | 14. <i>Glove Box</i> ⇨ 53 | 27. <i>Ignition Positions</i> ⇨ 214 |
| <i>Flash-to-Pass</i> ⇨ 93 | 15. <i>Manual Transmission</i> ⇨ 221 | 28. <i>Climate Control Systems</i> ⇨ 195 |
| <i>Driver Information Center (DIC)</i> ⇨ 81 | 16. <i>Power Outlets</i> ⇨ 68 | 29. <i>Instrument Panel Storage</i> ⇨ 53 |
| 5. <i>Instrument Panel Overview</i> ⇨ 63 | 17. <i>Hill Descent Control (HDC)</i> ⇨ 229 | 30. <i>Lane Departure Warning (LDW)</i> ⇨ 239 |
| 6. <i>Horn</i> ⇨ 65 | 18. <i>Traction Control System (TCS)</i> ⇨ 227 | 31. <i>Parking Assist</i> ⇨ 234 |
| <i>Driver's Airbag. See Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light</i> ⇨ 73 | <i>Electronic Stability Control (ESC)</i> ⇨ 228 | 32. Reflected LED Alert. <i>See Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System</i> ⇨ 232 |
| 7. <i>Driver Information Center (DIC)</i> ⇨ 81 | 19. <i>Selector Lever</i> ⇨ 219 | |
| 8. <i>Cruise Control</i> ⇨ 230 | 20. <i>Steering Wheel Adjustment</i> ⇨ 64 | |
| 9. Windscreen Wiper, Windscreen Washer System. <i>See Windshield Wiper/Washer</i> ⇨ 66 | 21. Hood Release Lever. <i>See Hood</i> ⇨ 255 | |
| | 22. Clutch Pedal. <i>See Control of a Vehicle</i> ⇨ 204 | |

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks

Keys	7
Remote Vehicle Start	8
Radio Remote Control	10
Manual Door Locks	11
Central Locking System	12
Lockout Protection	14

Doors

Rear Doors	14
Tailgate	15

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System	17
Immobilizer	18

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors	19
Manual Mirrors	19
Power Mirrors	19
Folding Mirrors	20

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror	21
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror (If equipped)	21

Windows

Power Windows	21
Heated Rear Window	24
Sun Visors	25

Keys and Locks

Keys

Replacement Keys

The key code number must be kept in a safe place. If the original keys are lost, replacement keys can be made by a Chevrolet dealer using the key code information.

See “Keys” under *Exterior Care*
➔ 300

Key with Folding Key Section



8 Keys, Doors, and Windows

Press the button to extend. To fold the key back, first press the button, then turn the key to the initial position.


Danger

Do not leave the keys in the ignition or even in the vehicle if children are inside unattended. This lack of responsibility may cause several life-threatening situations to children and to others. The keys provide the possibility to control many features of the vehicle, even to put it into motion.

Remote Vehicle Start



If equipped, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

 (Remote Vehicle Start) : This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear defog may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The

rear fog indicator light (if available) does not come on during remote start.



Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

If the vehicle is low on fuel, do not use the remote start feature. The vehicle may run out of fuel.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Radio Remote Control* ⇨ 10.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold  for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash. The

Keys, Doors, and Windows 9

turn signal lamps flashing confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

When the engine starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once after the first engine start.

If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle, turn the ignition switch on. If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle, start the engine normally.

Extending Engine Run Time

For a 10-minute extension, repeat Steps 1–3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.


When the remote start is extended, the second 10 minutes will be added on for a total of 20 minutes. An extension can be done 30 seconds after starting.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold  until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The key is in the ignition.
- The hood is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- The malfunction indicator lamp is on.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts, or a single remote start with an extension, have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

10 Keys, Doors, and Windows

Radio Remote Control



Enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- Central locking system, see *Central Locking System* ⇨ 12
- Anti-theft alarm system. *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇨ 17

The remote control has an approximate range of 20 meters.

The hazard warning flasher confirms the locking operation by illuminating once and the unlocking operation by illuminating twice.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Failure

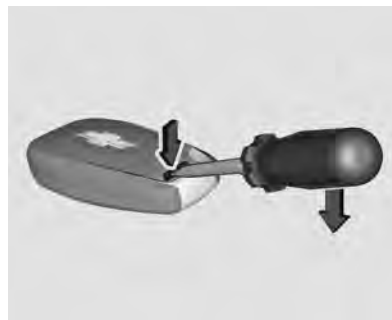
If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, it may be due to the following:

- Range exceeded.
- Battery voltage too low.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the remote control while not in range.
- Overloading the central locking by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.
- Key inserted in the ignition.

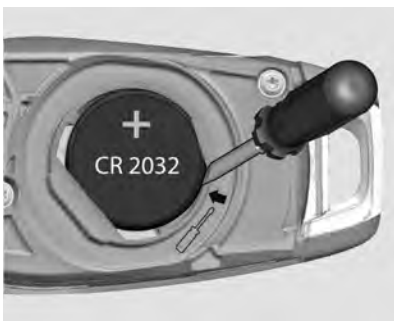
See *Central Locking System* ⇨ 12.

Battery Replacement of the Remote Control

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces. A necessary battery change is indicated as a vehicle message in *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ 82



1. Insert a flat screw driver in the recess and separate the back cover of the remote control unit.



2. Remove battery with a very small screw driver at the mark, see graphic.
3. Install the new battery. Be sure the negative side (-) faces down towards the base.
4. Close the transmitter cover.
5. Check the operation of the transmitter with your vehicle.

Batteries must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Use CR2032 (or equivalent) replacement battery.

Replacement Remote Control Unit

The remote control unit number is specified on the Infocard.

This number is needed when ordering replacement remote control unit as it is a component of the immobilizer system.

Manual Door Locks

Inside Locking



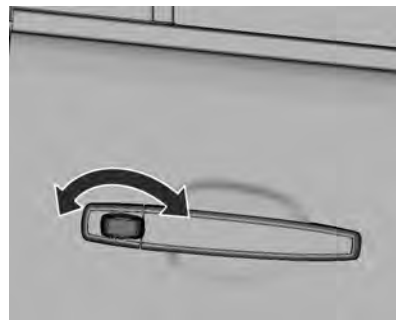
Push the locking button of the respective doors inwards. These doors will be locked.

The driver's door can only be locked after it have been closed. The possibility of forgetting the key inside the vehicle is thus prevented. However, if the locking buttons are pushed inwards with the door open, the locking system will invert the lock, so the locking will not occur.

Note

If the lock is operated constantly, it may not work properly.

Outside Locking



Turn the key clockwise.

The driver's door will be locked.

12 Keys, Doors, and Windows

Unlocking

Turn the key counterclockwise.

Just the driver's door will be unlocked. The other doors have to be unlocked by pulling the inside locking button outwards.

Note

In the event of cold weather conditions, the locking or unlocking of the vehicle could be impossible due to a frozen key lock. In this case tap the key lock or heat the key.

Central Locking System


Unlocks and locks doors.

A pull on an interior door handle will not unlock the door unless the locking button is unlocked.


Unlocking

Radio Remote Control



Press  once to unlock all doors.

The hazard lamps flash twice.

Press and hold  to automatically open all windows.

Locking

Radio Remote Control

Close doors.



Press  to lock the doors.

The hazard lamps flash once and any open windows automatically close.

If available, these features can be customized through the Infotainment System.

Central locking buttons

Locks or unlocks all doors.




Press  to lock.


Press  to unlock.

Unlocking



Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key counterclockwise. Switch on the ignition to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system and press the central locking button  to unlock all doors.

Locking

Press the central locking button  to lock the doors. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside with the key.

Central Locking System Failure

Unlocking

Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key counterclockwise. The other doors can be opened by using the interior handle after pulling the locking button outwards.

Locking

Push the locking button inwards for each door, except the driver's door. Then, close the driver's door and lock it from the outside with the key.

Automatic Locking

Auto Door Relock

All doors will be relocked automatically within 3 minutes, if any of the doors is not opened or the ignition key is turned to position **ACC** or **RUN**.

14 Keys, Doors, and Windows

Lockout Protection



The child lock is available on the rear doors of the crew cab.

Warning

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

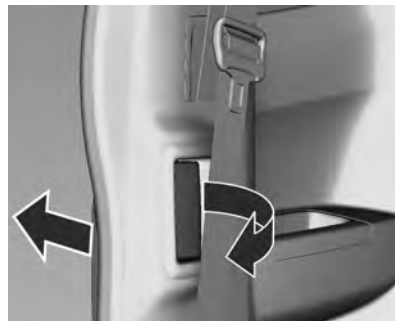
To activate the child lock, insert the key and turn the slot in the arrow direction. Doors cannot be opened from inside.

To deactivate the child lock, insert the key and turn the slot in the opposite direction. Doors can be opened from inside.

Doors

Rear Doors

Extended cab



The front door must be opened to open the rear door.

Open the rear door using the handle on the front edge of the rear door panel.

The rear doors must be closed before closing the front doors.

Side steps



The assist steps are available only on some crew cab models.

It provides an extra support to access the rear or front door.

Tailgate



There are two different tailgate opening variants:

1. **Central tailgate handle**
2. **Lateral tailgate handles**



Pull both side handles out, first one side, then the other.

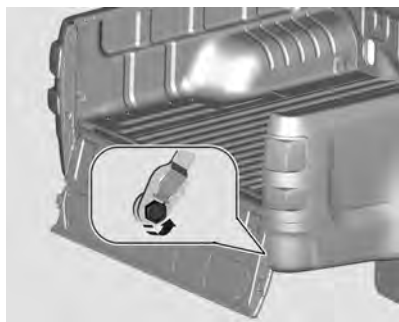
Note

Open the tailgate carefully. The side handles may cause finger injuries.

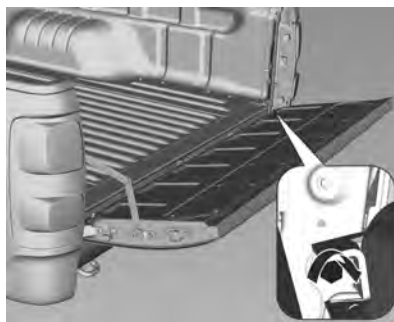
Procedure to remove the tailgate

1. Open the tailgate completely.

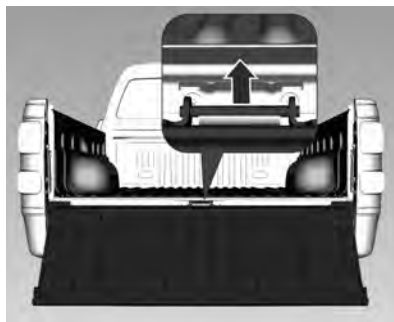
16 Keys, Doors, and Windows



2. To open completely the tailgate, raise the spring with a screwdriver and remove the steel cable's Yelets, one side per time.



3. Unscrew both side bolts as it is shown in the image.



4. Carefully lift the tailgate out of the hook and place it in a safe location.

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System


Anti theft alarm system monitors:

- Doors
- Ignition
- Hood

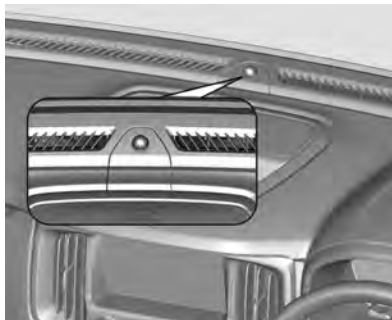
Activating



The anti-theft alarm system is activated through the radio remote control:

- Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle (initialization of the system), or;
- With the radio remote control, directly by pressing  once more after locking.

Status LED



Status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:

LED illuminates : test, arming delay.

LED flashes quickly : doors, tailgate or hood not completely closed, or system failure.


Status after system is armed:

LED flashes slowly : system is armed.

Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer in the event of failures.

Deactivating



Unlock the vehicle by pressing the button .

If the driver's door is unlocked using the key cylinder and opened with the anti-theft activated, the driver

18 Keys, Doors, and Windows


has 10 seconds to switch the key on ignition to avoid alarm trigger. During this period, horn chirps will sound.

If there was an alarm trigger during the period anti-theft alarm system was active, on deactivation, the horn will issue 3 chirps and hazard flashers will flash 3 times as a violation warning.

Alarm

The horn will sound and the signal lamps will flash for 30 seconds when the alarm is triggered.

The triggering of the alarm through any door or source can be reactivated only 30 seconds after the source has been cancelled.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated only by pressing the button  or switching on the ignition.

Immobilizer

The system is integrated into the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to start with

the key being used. If the transponder in the key is recognized, the vehicle can be started.

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system. The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the vehicle is turned off. The system is automatically disarmed when the ignition is turned from off to on. The security light, in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on. If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again. If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. It may be necessary to check the fuse. If the engine still does not start with the

other key, the vehicle needs service. If the vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer.

It is possible for the immobilizer system to learn new or replacement keys. Up to eight keys can be programmed for the vehicle. Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the vehicle theft system in the vehicle. See your dealer to get a new key blank cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

Note

The immobilizer does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it and switch on the anti-theft alarm system. See *Manual Door Locks* ⇨ 11 and *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇨ 17.

See *Immobilizer Light* ⇨ 80.

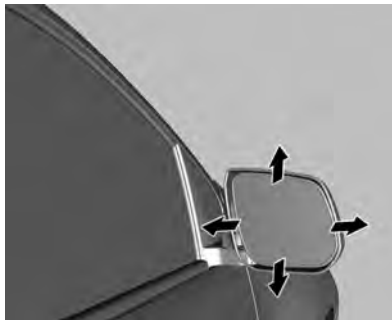
Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

Caution
A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are.

The convex exterior mirror reduces blind spots. The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Manual Mirrors



The adjustment is performed manually by tilting it to a suitable position.

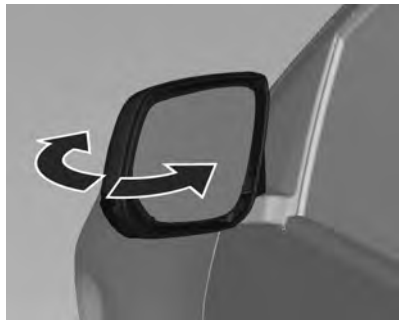
Power Mirrors



Move the selector switch to the **L** (left) or **R** (right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror. Move the mirror to the desired direction by pressing the four-way switch.

20 Keys, Doors, and Windows

Folding Mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric Folding (if equipped)



Press the selector switch (L / R switch) to the central position ● then push the four-way switch down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Press the four-way switch down again – both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If one mirror has been manually extended or folded, the other mirror can be extended or folded electronically by pressing the fourway switch down.

Note

If both mirrors are folded, push the four-way switch down to guarantee the correct unfold position before driving.

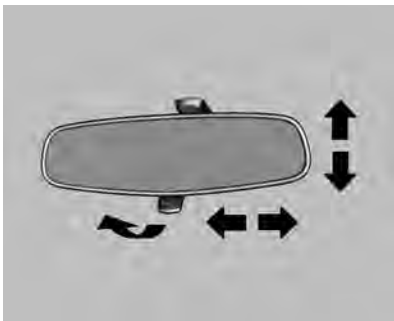
Warning

Always keep your mirrors properly adjusted, and use them while driving to increase your visibility of objects and other vehicles around you. Do not drive while either outside rearview mirror is folded back.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Manual Anti-glare



Caution

The inner rearview mirror can be moved in four directions, so be cautious and avoid the contact with the sun visors. Adjust all mirrors in the most effective position before starting to drive the vehicle.

To reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror (If equipped)



Dazzle from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

Power Windows

Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Be careful when closing the windows. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Power windows can be operated.

- With ignition on.
- Within 10 minutes after switching to position 1 – ignition off.

After switching off the ignition, window operation is disabled when any door is opened.

22 Keys, Doors, and Windows



Operate the switch for each respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close. The switch for the driver's window has a light which signals, through illumination, the operation readiness.

Pressure Relief

To reduce the front doors closing effort, when any of the front doors are opened it's respective window will automatically lower some centimeters to reduce the closing effort.

Express Power Window Automated Operation

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch fully down. To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch fully up. In automatic operation, the window will fully open or close even if you let go of the switch.

To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in automatic operation, pull up or press down and release the switch to the same direction of the movement.

Window Electronic Programming

Programming the power windows may be necessary if the 12-volt battery has been disconnected or discharged. To program the window:

Whenever you first turned on or when turned off the battery of the vehicle, the Intelligent System Power Windows should be programmed. This schedule should

be made in the conjunction of the driver's door switch, follow the steps below:

1. Turn on the ignition (without running the engine)
2. Press the power window switch in the direction "up" to its limit and hold for 2 seconds
3. Press the power window switch in the direction "down" for about 2 seconds. When you drop it, the window automatically descend to its limit
4. Repeat for all windows of the vehicle

Obs .: In case of battery replacement, window regulator replacement or changing position of the modules, you will need to recalibrate it. To do this, turn the ignition off and repeat the procedure described above.

Anti-pinch Function

In case there is obstacle detection while the window with anti-pinch function is closed automatically, the window will be opened automatically for safety.

Warning

Anti-pinch function may not operate after several uses. Do not operate the window switch with no purpose.

Override Safety Function

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is re-activated. In this mode, the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

Warning

Body parts outside the vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of the body inside vehicle.


Children can operate and become entrapped in power windows.

Do not leave your keys or unattended children in your car.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of power windows.

Child Safety System for Windows



Press switch  to deactivate the power windows of the rear doors. The other power windows can be operated by switches on the driver's door.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

24 Keys, Doors, and Windows

Initializing the Power Windows

If the driver's window cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the button for 2 seconds to move the window down.
3. Press the button to move the window up and close it completely. Keep holding the switch pulled for additional 2 seconds after the window regulator stops at the top position.

Heated Rear Window



Electronic control



Manual control

Operated by pressing the  button.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time or by pressing the button again.

The **LED** lights up to indicate that it is on.

Caution

Do not use sharp instruments or abrasive window cleaners on your vehicle's rear window.

Do not scratch or damage the defroster wires when you clean or work around the rear window.

Sun Visors



The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

Warning

Do not place the sun visor in such a manner that it obscures visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

26 Seats and Restraints

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints

Head Restraints 26

Front Seats

Seat Position 27

Seat Adjustment 28

Power Seat Adjustment 30

Rear Seats

Rear Seats 31

Safety Belts

Safety Belts 32

Three-Point Safety Belt 33

Safety Belt Use During

Pregnancy 35

Safety Belt Care 35

Airbag System

Airbag System 35

Front Airbag System 37

When Should an Airbag

Inflate? 39

What Makes an Airbag

Inflate? 40

How Does an Airbag

Restrain? 40

What Will You See after an

Airbag Inflates? 40

Airbag On-Off Switch 42

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped

Vehicle 43

Child Restraints

Child Restraint Systems 43

Child Restraint Installation

Locations 46

ISOFIX Child Restraint

Systems 50

Top Tether Child Restraint

Systems 52

Head Restraints

Position



Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.

Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision.

Make sure that the head restraint are readjusted before driving.



⚠ Danger

The head restraints are safety devices. Always adjust them correctly before driving.

The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level, never at the neck level.

If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to the highest position, and set to the lowest position for small people.

Head restraints on front seats

Height adjustment



Pull the head restraint upward.

To move down press the button and push the head restraint downward.

Head restraints on rear seats

Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upward.

To move down, press the button and push the head restraint downward.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.



- Sit as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that your legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.

28 Seats and Restraints

- Sit with your shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest angle so that you can easily reach the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between your shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not tilt the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum angle of approximately 25°.
- Adjust the steering wheel, see *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ 64.
- Set the seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision of all sides and on instrument panel. There should be at least one hand of clearance between your head and the headlining. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.



Warning

Sitting in a reclined position while your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your seat belts cannot protect properly when you are reclined.

The shoulder belt cannot protect properly because it will not rest against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could move into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The belt could move up over your abdomen and cause internal injuries.

For proper protection, when the vehicle is in motion, have the seat backrest upright. Then, sit well back in the seat and wear your seat belt properly.

Seat Adjustment

Danger

In order to permit safe airbag deployment, do not sit nearer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.

Danger

Never place objects of any size or shape under the front seats, because they can interfere with

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

the moving mechanisms, other parts of the seat structure or electrical components, when available, reducing or restricting the correct performance of these components and safety system.

⚠ Danger

Never adjust the seat position placing your hands, fingers, feet or other body parts under the seat, because the seats have moving parts and metal that can cause injury.

⚠ Warning

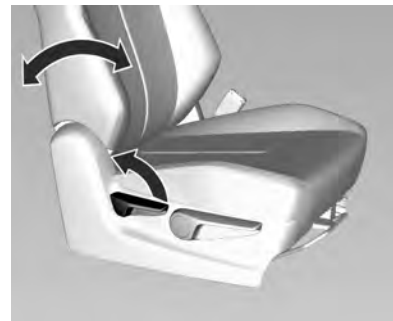
Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

Seat Positioning



Pull the handle, slide the seat, release the handle.

Seat Backrests



Pull the lever, adjust the inclination and release the lever. The seat should lock into place.

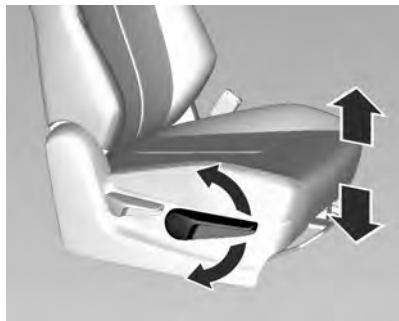
The backrest must not be tilted back too far (maximum approximately 25°).

Caution

Do not lean on the backrest while pulling the lever. The adjustment system of the backrest can be damaged.

30 Seats and Restraints

Seat Height



To adjust a manual seat:

- Pump the lever up to raise the seat.
- Pump the lever down to lower the seat.

Power Seat Adjustment

Warning

Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped. Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

Seat Positioning



Move the switch forwards or backwards.

Seat Height



Move the switch upward or downward.

Seat Backrests



Move the switch forwards or backwards.

Rear Seats

Folding down rear seatbacks

The vehicle may have rear seats.

Danger

Ensure the rear seatbacks are securely in place.

Do not adjust the rear seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

Caution

Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback to the upright position.

To fold the rear seatbacks down:

1. Unbuckle the centre seat belt by inserting the ignition key tip into the slot.
2. Allow the belt to retract slowly.

Caution

Do not let go of the unbuckled seat belt until it is fully retracted.

3. Crew cab: pull up on either the single centre, or both outboard seatback release straps.

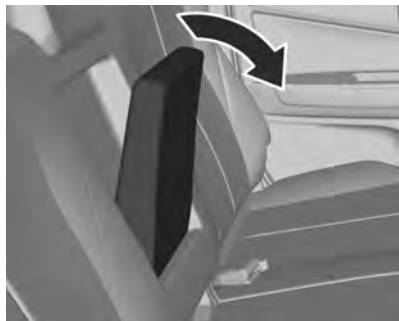
4. Fold the seatback forwards.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the seatback upwards and push firmly back into place to secure.
2. Reconnect and secure the centre seat belt, making sure it is not twisted.

32 Seats and Restraints

Armrest



Unfold the armrest by pulling downwards from the top.

Safety Belts

Seat belt reminder for driver's seat, see *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ 71.



The belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle for the safety of the occupants.

Warning

Fasten the seat belt before each trip and keep it fastened. In case of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are only designed to be used by one person at a time. They are not suitable for persons younger than 10 years of age or smaller than 150 cm.

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage and proper functionality. Have damaged components replaced.

After an accident, have the belts replaced by a Chevrolet dealer.

Note

Make sure that the belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Belt Force Limiters


In the front seats, when equipped with belt force limiters, stress on the body is reduced by dampened release of the belt during a collision.

Belt Pretensioners

In case of a head-on or rear-end collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts are tightened.

Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts or belt buckles) can trigger the belt tensioners with risk of injury.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by the continuous illumination of the control indicator , see *Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ 73.

Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a Chevrolet dealer. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

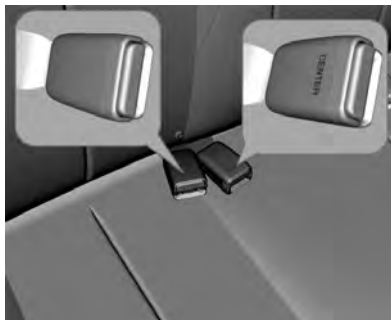
Note

Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to the belt pretensioner components.

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they

are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met.

Crew Cab Rear Buckles Usage



The rear occupants has their own buckles. The outboard occupant need to use the buckle without the CENTER marking while the center occupant shall use the buckle with the CENTER marking, as the picture above.

Three-Point Safety Belt

Fitting



Withdraw the belt from the reel, guide it untwisted across the body and push the latch plate into buckle until it clicks. Tension the lap belt regularly while driving by tugging the shoulder belt.

34 Seats and Restraints



Loose or bulky clothing hinders the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

Danger

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Height Adjustment



1. Pull the belt out slightly.
2. Pull the button.
3. Adjust height and engage.

Warning

Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm.

Do not adjust while driving.

Removing



To release the belt, press the red button on the belt buckle.

The belt will automatically return to its original position, if required pull the buckle downward and then release it, so that the belt will be fully retracted.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy



Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Safety Belt Care

Seat Belts should be properly cared for and maintained.

Do not make any changes to the seat belt system.

Verify that the belts have no sign of deterioration or have not been jammed by a sharp object.

Seat Belt hardware should be kept dry and free of dust or debris. As necessary, exterior hard surfaces and seat belt webbing may be lightly cleaned with mild soap and water. Ensure there is not excessive dust or debris in the mechanism. If dust or debris exists in the system please see the dealer. Parts may need to be replaced to ensure proper functionality of the system.

Caution

- The complete belt system should be inspected and verified by a technician on a regular basis.
- The seat belt, which was exposed to an accident, has to be replaced by a new one.

Airbag System

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems.

When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

Danger

This vehicle was designed to provide any occupants with full safety.

This is why chemically locked fasteners were installed on the assembly line for certain components. These fasteners should only be replaced with the original equipment fasteners with the same part number.

Additionally, cleaning the mating part is essential to assure perfect torque and effective reaction of

(Continued)

36 Seats and Restraints

Danger (Continued)

the physical-chemical locking compounds after the installation of any replacement fastener.

Though, we strongly recommend that any service involving the vehicle safety systems (namely, brakes, seats, suspension, safety belts, etc.) or any service that affects these systems indirectly, should be carried out by a Chevrolet Dealership or Authorized Repair Shop. For further explanation, contact your Chevrolet dealer.

Vehicles equipped with an airbag system have specific components, such as inflatable bags, seat belts, bumper beams, electronic items that must only be replaced by original and identical parts as those assembled by the factory.

Note

The airbag systems electronic control is located in the center console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not stick anything on the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by Chevrolet dealers.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system, as these will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

Have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, all trim parts, the door seals, the handles and the seats replaced by a Chevrolet dealer.

Danger

If handled improperly, the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. If you are sitting too close to the airbag, it can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the airbag while the vehicle is in motion.

The airbag may cause facial or body scratch, injury by broken glasses or burns due to the explosion when the airbag is deflagrated.

When an airbag deploys, there may be a loud noise and smoke. These conditions are normal and are not

dangerous but may irritate the skin of the occupants. If the irritation is persistent, contact a doctor.

⚠ Danger

Never allow children, infants, pregnant women, the old and the weak to sit in the front passenger seats fitted with airbags. Do not drive with a baby seat fitted thereon. In case of an accident, the impact from the inflated airbag can cause facial injury or death.

⚠ Danger

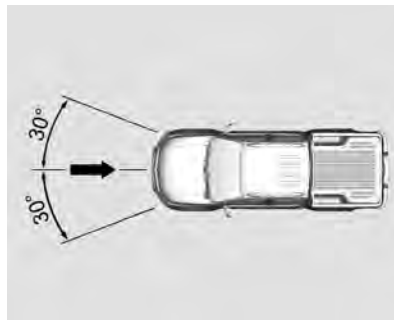
If the vehicle is impacted by bumps or objects on unpaved roads or sidewalks, the airbags may inflate. Drive slowly on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended airbag deployment.

See *Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ 73.

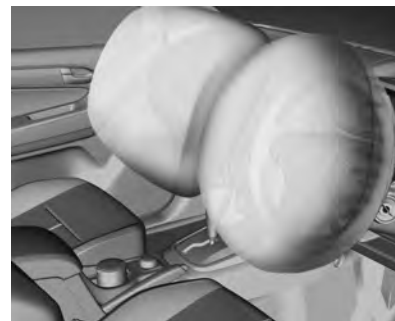
Front Airbag System

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel, one in the instrument panel on the passenger's side and, if equipped, a knee airbag in the lower part of the driver's side instrument panel.

These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.



The front airbag system is triggered in the event of an accident of a certain severity in the depicted area. The ignition must be on.



The forward movement of the front seat occupants is slowed, thus, considerably reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head.

38 Seats and Restraints

Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position, see Seat Position. Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions. Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then the airbag is able to protect.

Important recommendations:

- Never keep any object between the airbag and the seat occupants. In case of airbag inflation, those objects may be thrown against the occupants, causing injuries.
- Do not install any non-original accessories on the steering wheel or the instrument panel. These accessories may interfere with the airbag course at the time of inflation, thus hindering the system operation.

- Never modify any airbag components. The incorrect handling may cause it to inflate inadvertently, causing the driver or passenger to be hurt.
- The electronic system that controls the airbag is located in the front console. In order to avoid failures, do not add any magnetic object close to the console.
- In case the vehicle is exposed to any floods, seek the assistance of an Authorized Dealer.
- The steering wheel and instrument panel disassembly should only be carried out in an Authorized Dealer.
- The airbag was designed to discharge only once. After discharged, it should be immediately replaced by an Authorized Dealer.
- Do not carry or keep any objects in your mouth when you are driving. If the airbag inflates, the risk of injury or fatal accident will increase considerably.

- When transferring the vehicle to a new owner, please inform the new owner that the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system and that the instructions within this manual should be read and followed.
- Disassembling a vehicle with a non-inflated airbag may be very dangerous. When discarding a vehicle, seek the assistance of an Authorized Dealer.

Installing a child restraint system in the passenger seat of a vehicle equipped with an airbag:

Vehicles equipped with an airbag system can be identified by the word airbag on the self-adhesive label on the front and back of the passenger sunshade. It is always visible.

Seats and Restraints 39

Warning

In vehicles equipped with Airbag in the passenger seat, the child restraint system should not be installed in the passenger seat.



Warning

This vehicle was designed to provide any occupants with full safety.

This is why chemically locked fasteners were installed on the assembly line for certain components. These fasteners

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

should only be replaced with the original equipment fasteners with the same part number.

Additionally, cleaning the mating part is essential to assure perfect torque and effective reaction of the physical-chemical locking compounds after the installation of any replacement fastener.

Though, we strongly recommend that any service involving the vehicle safety systems (brakes, seats, suspension, safety belts, etc.) or any service that affects these systems indirectly, should be carried out by an Authorized Dealer. For further explanation, contact your Authorized Dealer.

Vehicles equipped with an airbag system have specific components, such as inflatable bags, seat belts, bumper beams, electronic items that must only be

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

replaced by original and identical parts as those assembled by the factory.

Warning

Never install a frontal impact bar (bull bar) in an Airbag - equipped vehicle. This accessory can affect the operation of the Airbag system.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System* ⇨ 35. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. The vehicle has

40 Seats and Restraints

electronic sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is traveling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In

moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ 39.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes.

Seats and Restraints 41

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. The feature may also activate, without airbag inflation, after an event that exceeds a predetermined threshold. You can lock the doors, turn off the interior lamps, and turn off the hazard warning flashers by using the controls for those features.

Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that

42 Seats and Restraints

an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Airbag On-Off Switch

The front passenger airbag system has to be deactivated if a child restraint system is to be fitted on this seat. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.

The front passenger air bag system can be deactivated via a key operated switch on the right side of the instrument panel.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:



To turn off the front passenger airbag, insert ignition key into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the OFF position. The front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision.

When the front passenger airbag is turned off, the control indicator OFF illuminates continuously near the courtesy light switch. No adult person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat.

To more information about the child restraint system installation, see *Child restraint*.



To turn the front passenger airbag on again, insert ignition key into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the ON position.

The front passenger airbag is now enabled (may inflate). When the front passenger airbag is turned on, the control indicator ON illuminates continuously in the centre console to let you know the airbag is on. A child restraint system must not be installed.

Danger

Risk of fatal injury for a child using a child restraint system on a seat with activated front passenger airbag.

Risk of fatal injury for an adult person on a seat with deactivated front passenger airbag.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

 **Danger**

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag systems for the front passenger seat must be deactivated; otherwise, the triggering of the airbags poses a risk of fatal injury to the child.

This risk is even higher if rearfacing child restraint systems are used on the front passenger seat.

Never use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat if the vehicle does not have the Airbag On-Off Switch in the OFF position plus the control indicator OFF continuously illuminated in the centre console.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. See your dealer for service.

 **Warning**

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Child Restraints

Child Restraint Systems

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system. Infants and children should be properly restrained by means of restraint systems, in terms of this manual.

The hips of an infant are too small and a regular seat belt will not remain in the correct place, as necessary. Instead, there is a possibility that the seat belt remains at the infant's abdomen forcing it directly and can cause serious injury in case of collision.

When transporting children up to ten (10) years, ensure the compliance with safety regulations and local laws.

Market Child restraint systems classification

Child restraint system available in the market are classified regarding the mass of the child as following:

44 Seats and Restraints

Group	Weight class
Group 0	Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)
Group 0+	Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)
Group I	9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.)
Group II	15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.)
Group III	22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.)

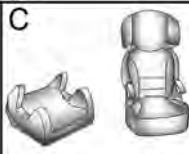
A



B



C



a) Group 0 and 0+ (Baby Seat)

Danger

Do not place a Baby seat on the front seat; otherwise, the airbag in case of collision may cause serious injury to the child, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.



AIRBAG



b) Group I (Child Seat)

c) Group I and II (Booster seat)

Note

Observe the rules provided by current legislation regarding the installation child restraint system installation in the front seat.

Note

For a correct choice of the child restraint system, it is important to consider not only age and mass factors, but also the biotype of the child.

General Motors recommends using genuine GM child restraint system.



Note

Before acquiring a child restraint device, check if it is suitable for the vehicle's seat belt and seat.

 **Warning**

- When carrying a child, follow the procedures for the transport of children established by the local laws.
- In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.
- Make sure that the child restraint device is installed properly. If the child seat is not properly attached, the risk of serious injury in case of collision increases.
- Do not attach or place objects or other materials on the child restraint device.
- Do not leave any loose object in the vehicle. During an impact, this object may move and cause injuries on the occupants.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- After removing the child from the vehicle, keep the child restraint device attached with the seat belt, in order to avoid the device from being thrown forward in case of sudden braking.
- If it is not necessary to keep the child restraint device on the rear seat, remove it from the vehicle and store it.
- After an accident, it is necessary to replace the child restraint device because it must have suffered non-visible damages.

Note

Make sure that the child restraint device:

- Is in accordance to the instructions given by the child restraint device manufacturer.

- Have the label of approval of safety regulations accomplishments, in terms of the local laws.

- Are suitable to your vehicle.

Always use the child restraint device properly installed and with the seat belt placed, even if the course is short. Check, mainly, if the seat belt is properly stretched, if it is not twisted or positioned incorrectly.

46 Seats and Restraints

Child Restraint Installation Locations

Permissible options for fitting a child restraint system (with 3 points seat belt)

Regular Cab

Mass Group	Front Center Passenger Seat (when available)	Front Outboard Passenger Seat
0: up to 10 kg	X	X
0+: up to 13 kg	X	X
I: 9 to 18 kg	X	X
II: 15 to 25 kg	X	X
III: 22 to 36 kg	X	X
X: No child restraint system permitted in this location and in this weight class.		

Extended Cab

Mass Group	Passenger seat		Rear outboard seats
	activated airbag	deactivated airbag	
0: up to 10 kg	X	U	X
0+: up to 13 kg	X	U	X
I: 9 to 18 kg	X	U	X
II: 15 to 25 kg	X	U	X

Seats and Restraints 47

Extended Cab (cont'd)

Mass Group	Passenger seat		Rear outboard seats
	activated airbag	deactivated airbag	
III: 22 to 36 kg	X	U	X
<p>X: No child restraint system permitted in this position and weight class.</p> <p>U: Installation permitted in conjunction with three-point safety belt (Universal) when vehicle is equipped with Airbag On-Off switch moved to OFF position. Move passenger seat as far as back as possible. Adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt is tight on the buckle side. Adjust the seat belt height adjuster to the lowest position.</p>			

Crew Cab

Mass Group	Front Passenger seat	Rear outboard seats	Rear Centre seat
0: up to 10 kg	X	U	U
0+: up to 13 kg	X	U	U
I: 9 to 18 kg	X	U	U
II: 15 to 25 kg	X	U	U
III: 22 to 36 kg	X	U	U
<p>X: No child restraint system permitted in this position and weight class.</p> <p>U: Installation permitted in conjunction with three-point safety belt (Universal). Move front seat to the foremost or adjust front seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that there is no interference between child restraint system on rear seats and front seat backrest.</p>			

48 Seats and Restraints

Note

- Move the head restraint to uppermost position to ensure that there is no interference with the child restraint system installation. If it interferes in any way, remove the headrest.

Danger

WARNING - EXTREME HAZARD

NEVER use a rearward facing restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it. Death or Serious Injury to the Child can occur.

Note

The provisions established by the laws overlaps the provisions of this Manual.

Danger

Never use a single seat belt which an adult and a child. During an impact, the seat belt probably

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

exert strong pressure on the child, causing serious or fatal injury.

Never allow two children sharing the same seat belt. Both could suffer serious injuries in a collision.



Danger

Infants and children must never be carried on the lap of another occupant.

Although an infant does not weight much, it will be so heavy during a collision that it will be impossible to hold it, even if the occupant is attached to the seat belt.

Children with more than 10 years old

Correct use of the seat belt in children with more than 10 years old.



To verify if a child is able to use a three-point belt, make sure the child knees fold comfortably on the edge seat, transversal belt passes between the neck and child arm, lap belt is as low as possible over the child hip.

⚠ Danger

- Accident statistics show that the children are safer if they are in the rear seat and using safety belt in a suitable way.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Children without seat belt can be thrown out in an accident.
- Always that a child is seated, the lap belt shall be in low position closely to hips, touching child thighs. In an accident, it applies a belt force in pelvic bones of the child.



⚠ Danger

This picture shows a child seated in a seat with a three-point belt used incorrectly.

If a child use the belt this way, in a collision can suffer injuries and risk of death.

50 Seats and Restraints


ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems
(Crew Cab — if equipped)

Anchoring points ISOFIX of vehicle



Anchoring hooks ISOFIX are designed to retention ISOFIX child restraint.

ISOFIX anchoring hooks are located between backrest and rear seat and they are identified by buttons with symbol .

ISOFIX anchoring hooks will be located just below identification buttons.

Instructions to fix retention device for children in the ISOFIX anchoring:

1. Position retention device for child in front of the seat where it will be installed.
2. Lock retention device ISOFIX hooks in the anchoring ISOFIX of vehicle following manufacturer instructions of retention device for child.
3. Check if retention device is completely closed to vehicle seat.

Admissible positions for fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system

Mass Group	Size Class	Fixture	Front Passenger Seat	Outboard Seats in the second row	Center Seats in the second row
0: up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
0+: up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
I: 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X
II: 15 to 25 kg			X	IL	X
III: 22 to 36 kg			X	IL	X
<p>IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type.</p> <p>IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this weight class.</p> <p>X: No ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this mass group.</p>					

52 Seats and Restraints

ISOFIX size class and seat device:

A – ISO/F3 = Forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

B – ISO/F2 = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

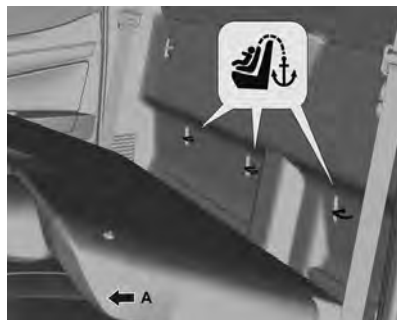
B1 – ISO/F2X = Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

C – ISO/R3 = Rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 18 kg.

D – ISO/R2 = Rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 18 kg.

E – ISO/R1 = Rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg.

Top Tether Child Restraint Systems



A. Front of vehicle

TOP TETHER Anchoring points of vehicle

TOP TETHER Anchoring points for retention device for child are located at the rear of the rear seats in line with the three rear seating positions, always aligned with rear seats and identified with symbol

Note

Use only TOP TETHER anchoring points for securing retention device for children.

Instructions to fix retention device for children in the TOP TETHER anchoring:

1. Lock TOP TETHER hook retention device for child in the TOP TETHER anchoring of vehicle following manufacturer instructions of retention device for child.
2. Check if retention device for child is completely closed to vehicle seat.

Storage

Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage	53
Glove Box	53
Cupholders	54
Sunglasses Storage (If equipped)	55
Underseat Storage	55
Armrest Storage	55
Armrest Storage (Auxiliary Cable Route)	56

Luggage/Load Locations

Load Compartment	56
------------------------	----

Roof Rack System

Roof Rack System	58
------------------------	----

Information on Loading the Vehicle

Information on Loading the Vehicle	59
---	----

Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage



Instrument panel upper storage.

Caution

Do not leave glasses, CDs, CD cases or flammable items, e.g. cigarette lighter, in the tray when the vehicle is parked in direct sun

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

exposure or at high ambient temperatures as the tray may become very hot.

Glove Box



To open, pull the handle.

54 Storage

Warning

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glovebox door closed while driving.

Cupholders

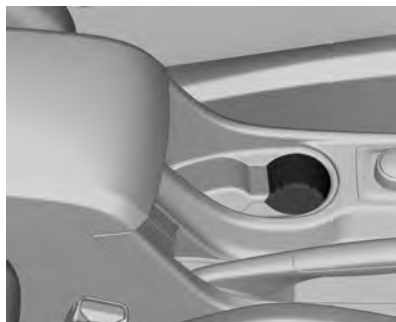
Warning

Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you may burn yourself, and this could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

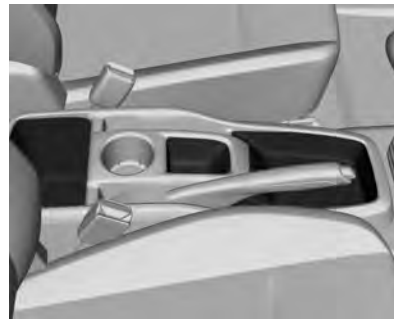
To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.



A cupholder is located at each door.



A cupholder is located in the center console model A.



A cupholder is located in the center console model B.

Sunglasses Storage (If equipped)



To open : Push the rear part of the cover.

To close : Push up the cover until it latches.

Do not use it to store heavy objects.

Underseat Storage Crew Cab



Crew cab models have storage compartments under the bottom of the rear seats cushion.

To access the storage compartments, pull the strap on the front edge of the rear seat cushion to release the cushion and lift the cushion.

Attach the end of the strap on the head restraint posts to keep the cushion of the bottom of the rear seats lifted up.

To return to the normal position, loosen the end of the strap from the head restraint posts and lower the seat until it locks on the floor.

⚠ Danger

Never adjust the seat placing your hands, fingers, feet or other body parts on moving parts of the rear seats, doing so can cause injury.

Armrest Storage



56 Storage

Press the latch and lift the armrest lid upward.

Armrest Storage (Auxiliary Cable Route)



The armrest have a route for auxiliary cable.

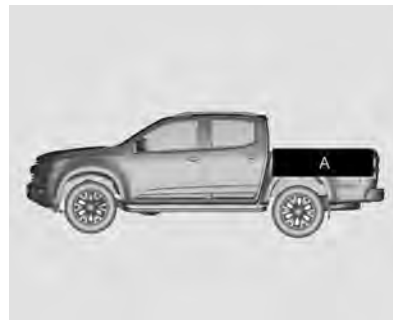


Use the route shown above to prevent auxiliary cable pinch, during console armrest down, when using the cable.

Luggage/Load Locations

Load Compartment

Cargo Box Loading Capacity



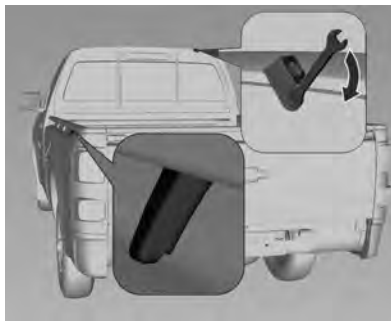
Area	Capacity	in m ³
A	Regular Cab	1,570
A	Extended Cab	1,281
A	Crew Cab	1,061

Tailgate



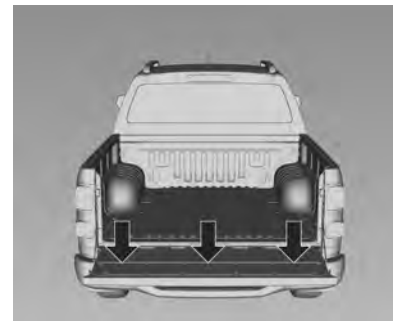
To open, pull the center handle and lower the tailgate. To close, raise the tailgate and press the upper ends until hearing a locking noise.

Loading Points



There are models equipped with hooks on the pickup box and other tie down points as shown in the image above.

Load Limit on the Tailgate



Caution

The load limit on the tailgate should be followed, otherwise the tailgate and the body might be damaged.

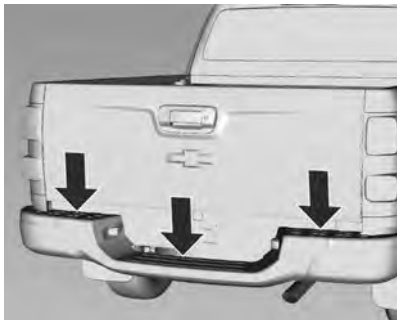
Load limit on the tailgate:

Concentrated : 100 kg

Distributed : 150 kg

58 Storage

Load Limit on the Rear Bumper



The maximum load on the rear bumper is 100 kg.

When Loading the Vehicle

Keep in mind some important items when loading the vehicle:

- The heaviest load should be placed on the floor, ahead of the rear axle. Place the load as far forward as possible.

- Be sure the load is properly attached in order to avoid that the objects are thrown out of the pickup box.
- Try to distribute the weight evenly.
- When placing an object inside the vehicle, always attach it securely.
- Do not exceed the total gross weight and the maximum weight on the front and rear axles when loading the vehicle.

Caution

This could damage the vehicle components and also affect the vehicle driving conditions. This could result in loss of control and reduce the vehicle useful life.

- The warranty terms do not cover component or part failure due to excessive load.

Roof Rack System

For vehicles with roof rack, the rack can be used to load items. For roof racks that do not have cross rails included, GM Certified cross rails can be purchased as an accessory. Seek the assistance of your authorized dealer for additional information.

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended.

The maximum load for the roof rack is 75 kg with the load evenly distributed.

Caution

Loading cargo on the roof rack which exceeds the maximum load or hangs over the rear or a side of the vehicle may damage the vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests evenly between the side rails, making sure to fasten the cargo securely.

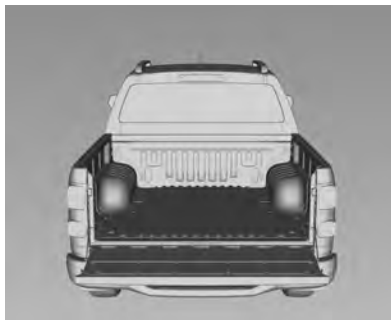
Warning

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, make sure the cross rails and cargo are securely fastened. Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's center of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control.

If driving for a long period on rough roads or at high speeds, occasionally stop the vehicle to make sure the cargo remains in its place.

Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle. See *Load Compartment* ⇨ 56.

Information on Loading the Vehicle



Caution

The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior of the vehicle.

- If objects can be stacked, the heaviest objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Secure objects in the load area to prevent sliding.
- Do not drive with an open tailgate.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight and the curb weight.

The curb weight includes weights for the luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (tank 90 % full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the curb weight.

- Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tire pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

60 Storage

Caution
Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a negative effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher center of gravity.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Under no circumstance should humans or animals be on the load area while the vehicle is moving.
Caution
Do not use the Sport Bar as a support for bracing the load (if equipped).

Instruments and Controls 61

Instruments and Controls

Instrument Panel Overview

Instrument Panel Overview 63

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 64
Steering Wheel Controls 65
Horn 65
Windshield Wiper/Washer 66
Outside Temperature 67
Clock 68
Power Outlets 68

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 69
Speedometer 69
Odometer 69
Trip Odometer 69
Tachometer 70
Fuel Gauge 70
Control Indicators 70
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 71
Turn Signal 71

Safety Belt Reminders 71
Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light 73
Airbag On-Off Light (If equipped) 73
Charging System Light 74
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 75
Brake and Clutch System Warning Light 75
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 76
Up-Shift Light 76
Four-Wheel-Drive Light 76
Hill Descent Control Light 77
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light 77
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 77
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light 77
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 78
Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light 78
Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light 78
Pre-Heat Light 79
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light 79
Engine Oil Pressure Light 79
Low Fuel Warning Light 80

Immobilizer Light 80
High-Beam On Light 80
Front Fog Lamp Light 80
Rear Fog Lamp Light 81
Lamps On Reminder 81
Cruise Control Light 81
Trailer Indicator Light (If equipped) 81

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) 81

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 82
Warning Buzzers 82
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 83
Brake System Messages 83
Cruise Control Messages 83
Door Ajar Messages 83
Engine Cooling System Messages 84
Engine Oil Messages 84
Fuel System Messages 84
Key and Lock Messages 84
Lamp Messages 84
Object Detection System Messages 85
Ride Control System Messages 85

62 Instruments and Controls

Airbag System Messages	85
Anti-theft Alarm System Messages	85
Steering System Messages (If equipped)	86
Tire Messages	86
Transmission Messages	87
Vehicle Reminder Messages ...	88
Vehicle Speed Messages	88
Trip Computer	
Trip Computer	88

Instrument Panel Overview



Cluster

64 Instruments and Controls

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Engine Oil Pressure Light</i> ⇨ 79 | 17. <i>Lamps On Reminder</i> ⇨ 81 |
| 2. <i>Malfunction Indicator Lamp</i>
⇨ 75 | 18. <i>Four-Wheel-Drive Light</i> ⇨ 76 |
| 3. <i>Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light</i> ⇨ 78 | 19. <i>Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light</i> ⇨ 77 |
| 4. <i>Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light</i> ⇨ 76 | 20. <i>Hill Descent Control Light</i> ⇨ 77 |
| 5. <i>Cruise Control Light</i> ⇨ 81 | 21. <i>Turn Signal</i> ⇨ 71 |
| 6. <i>Safety Belt Reminders</i> ⇨ 71 | 22. <i>High-Beam On Light</i> ⇨ 80 |
| 7. <i>Turn Signal</i> ⇨ 71 | 23. <i>Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light</i> ⇨ 79 |
| 8. <i>Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light</i> ⇨ 77 | 24. <i>Immobilizer Light</i> ⇨ 80 |
| 9. <i>Vehicle Ahead Indicator</i> ⇨ 77 | 25. <i>Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light</i> ⇨ 73 |
| 10. <i>Brake and Clutch System Warning Light</i> ⇨ 75 | 26. <i>Trailer Indicator Light (If equipped)</i> ⇨ 81 |
| 11. <i>Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light</i> ⇨ 78 | 27. <i>Pre-Heat Light</i> ⇨ 79 |
| 12. <i>Safety Belt Reminders</i> ⇨ 71 | 28. <i>Rear Fog Lamp Light</i> ⇨ 81 |
| 13. <i>Charging System Light</i> ⇨ 74 | 29. <i>Front Fog Lamp Light</i> ⇨ 80 |
| 14. <i>Fuel Gauge</i> ⇨ 70 | |
| 15. <i>Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge</i> ⇨ 71 | |
| 16. <i>Driver Information Center (DIC)</i>
⇨ 81 | |

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering Wheel Controls



The infotainment system can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

See *Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)* ⇨ 102.




The Cruise Control and the Forward Collision Alert can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ 230.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 232.

Horn



To sound the horn, press  on the steering wheel.

Caution

Do not hang or tie anything on the steering column such as a wreath or holy thread . It can cause the damage the wiring on steering wheel and cause the damage to the system such as horn or airbag does not work.

66 Instruments and Controls

Windshield Wiper/Washer

Windscreen Wiper



OFF : Off

INT : timed interval wiping. Auto rain sensor (If equipped).

LO : slow

HI : fast

For a single wipe when the windshield wipers are off, push the lever up.

Turn off when in the car wash.

Adjustable Wiper Interval



Wiper lever in position **INT**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the desired wipe interval:

Long interval : Turn adjuster wheel downward.

Short interval : Turn adjuster wheel upward.

Automatic wiping with rain sensor (If equipped)

INT : automatic wiping with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor (If equipped)



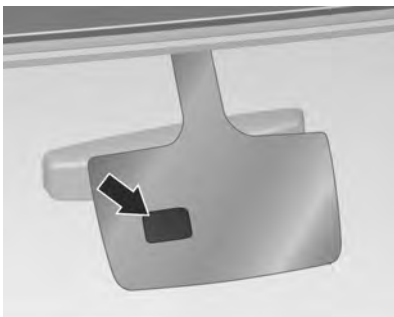
Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

Low sensitivity : Turn adjuster wheel upwards

High sensitivity : Turn adjuster wheel downwards

Caution

Switch off the windscreen wiper and automatic operation with rain sensor in car washes.



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

If you move the wiper to rain sensor mode or turn the adjuster wheel from low sensitivity to high sensitivity when the ignition is switched on, the windscreen wipers operate once to check the system.

Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wiper wipes for a few strokes.

Caution

Less than clear vision for the driver can lead to an accident resulting in personal injury and damage to your vehicle or other property.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Do not operate the windscreen wipers when the windscreen is dry or obstructed, as with mud, snow or ice. Using the wipers on an obstructed windscreen can damage the wiper blades, wiper motor, and glass.

Check if the blades are not frozen to the windows before operating in cold weather. Wiper operation while the blade is frozen can damage the wiper motor.

Do not operate the windscreen washer continuously for more than a few seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This can cause the washer motor to overheat.

Outside Temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

68 Instruments and Controls

See “Outside Air Temperature”
under *Trip Computer* ⇨ 88.

Clock

Time is shown in the Infotainment
display.

See *Overview* ⇨ 99.

Power Outlets



The 12V power outlets are located
on the front panel.



A 12V power outlet may be located
on the back of the front center
console.

Note

Quantity and positioning of power
outlets depends on vehicle version.

Caution

Do not exceed the maximum
power consumption of 120 Watts
per power outlet.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

With the ignition off and all doors
closed, the power outlets will be
deactivated after 10 minutes.
Additionally, the power outlets are
deactivated in case of low battery
voltage.

Do not connect any
current-delivering accessories,
e.g., electrical charging devices
or batteries.

Do not damage the sockets by
using unsuitable plugs.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement.

Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges can prevent injury. Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function.

Gauges and warning lights often work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check this section for more information.

Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Speedometer



Indicates the vehicle speed.

Odometer



The bottom line displays the recorded distance.

Trip Odometer

The Trip display shows the current distance traveled since the last reset of the trip odometer.

See *Trip Computer* ⇨ 88.

70 Instruments and Controls

Tachometer



Displays the engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.


Caution

If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.

Fuel Gauge





Displays the fuel level in the tank.

If the level in the tank is low, the control indicator  illuminates, the chime comes on and the Driver Information Center also displays a message.

Refuel immediately.

Never run the tank dry.

Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified tank capacity.

The arrow  near the symbol  indicates that the fuel filler door is on the left side of the vehicle.

Note

Before refueling, make sure that the ignition is off.

If you operate the ignition switch while refueling, the needle of the fuel gauge may not indicate the proper fuel level.

On uphill and downhill slopes, the needle on the fuel gauge may not indicate the proper fuel level due to movements of the fuel in the fuel tank.

Control Indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colors mean:

Red : Danger, important reminder

Amber : Warning, information, failure

Green : Confirmation of activation

Blue : Confirmation of activation

White : Confirmation of activation

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Displays the coolant temperature.

Left area : Regular operating temperature not yet reached

Central area : Normal operating temperature

Right area : Temperature too high

If the engine is too hot, the gauge pointer will move toward the red area, a warning chime will activate, and the Driver Information Center will also display a message. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

See *Driver Information Center (DIC)*
⇒ 81.

Caution

To avoid damage to the engine, check the coolant level and seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Turn Signal



⇒ flashes green.

Flashes

The control indicator flashes if a turn signal or the hazard warning flashers is activated.

See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals*
⇒ 94.

Safety Belt Reminders



⚠ for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the ignition is switched on, this control indicator is activated and remains active for some seconds, to remind the driver to fasten the safety belt.

Soon after the ignition is switched on or the engine is started, the control indicator begins to flash, and also a chime sounds, for a few

72 Instruments and Controls

seconds. Then the control indicator stops flashing and illuminates until the driver safety belt is fastened.

Additionally, if the driver remains with the safety belt unfastened while the vehicle is moving, after reaching a specific distance or speed, a chime sounds and the control indicator flashes for several seconds.


If the driver safety belt is already fastened, neither the control indicator nor the chime comes on.

See *Safety Belts* ⇨ 32.

If Safety Belt Reminder is active the Rear Parking Assistance chime will not operate.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder (If equipped)



 2 for passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the vehicle is started this light flashes and a chime may sound to remind passengers to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.




This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Rear Passenger Safety Belt Reminder (If equipped)



   for rear passenger's seat appears on Driver Information Center.

When the engine starts, the symbols will be displayed in the lower part of the DIC. If a rear seat belt is buckled, the corresponding symbol will dim.

Once the vehicle is travelling over 10 km/h for approximately over 10 seconds, the symbols will extinguish. If a rear seat belt is unbuckled whilst driving, a chime will sound and the corresponding symbol will flash in the DIC.

Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light



 illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after 4 seconds or illuminates while driving, there is a failure in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Warning

If the airbag control indicator control indicator stays on after the ignition is switched on, or after the engine is started, or comes on
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away. Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a Chevrolet dealer.

See *Safety Belts* ⇨ 32 and *Airbag System* ⇨ 35.

Airbag On-Off Light (If equipped)

If the vehicle has an airbag on-off switch, it also has a passenger airbag status indicator located near courtesy lights switch.



When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator symbols for on and off, will light for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, either the on or off symbol will light to let you know the status of the front outboard passenger frontal airbag.

When the front outboard passenger airbag is manually turned off using the airbag on-off switch on the instrument panel endcap, the indicator light OFF and the off symbol will come on and stay on as a reminder that the airbag has been turned off. This light will go off when

74 Instruments and Controls

the airbag has been turned on. See *Airbag On-Off Switch* ⇨ 42 for more information, including important safety information.

Warning

If the front outboard passenger frontal airbag is turned off for a person who does not fall under the conditions specified in this manual, that person will not have the extra protection of an airbag. In a crash, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect the person sitting there. Do not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag unless the person sitting there falls under the conditions specified in this manual.

Warning

If the airbag and safety belt tensioner light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the front outboard passenger frontal airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

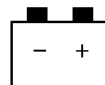
To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ 73 for more information, including important safety information.

If the word ON and the on symbol is lit, it means that the front outboard passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate). See *Airbag On-Off Switch* ⇨ 42 for more information, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a

problem with the lights or the airbag on-off switch. See your dealer for service.

Charging System Light



 illuminates red.

It illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the Engine is Running

Stop, then switch off the engine. The battery indicator provides warning for a problem with the charging system, a high or low system voltage, or a load management problem. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ 81.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



 illuminates amber.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the Engine is Running

Failure in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits are exceeded. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer immediately.

Flashes when the Engine is Running

An error state has been detected in the high pressure fuel injection system or the timing synchronization system.

Diagnosis and service are required. Failure to repair could result in permanent engine damage. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer immediately.

To avoid serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard acceleration.
- Avoid steep uphill slopes.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo as soon as possible.

Brake and Clutch System Warning Light



 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the parking brake is applied and if the brake or clutch fluid level is too low or if there is a brake system failure, see *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 263.

Warning

If the brake system warning lamp illuminates, check the brake fluid level and contact an authorized dealer immediately.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low, do not drive the vehicle.

This may mean your brakes are not working properly. Driving with malfunctioning brakes can cause personal injuries and damage to your vehicle and other property.

Illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the manual parking brake is applied, see *Parking Brake* ⇨ 226.

If the parking brake has not been fully released and the vehicle is moving, after reaching a certain

76 Instruments and Controls

speed, the chime comes on and the Driver Information Center also displays a message, see *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ 81.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



 illuminates amber.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator goes out.

In an event of fault, a chime will sound when the control indicator comes on.

If the control indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The regular brake system remains operational but without ABS function.


If both the ABS and the brake system control indicators are on, the vehicle antilock brakes are not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes.

Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)*
⇨ 226 and
Driver Information Center (DIC)
⇨ 81.

Up-Shift Light

Upshift Gear

 SHIFT: For vehicles with manual transmission, the upshift indicator illuminates when a higher gear is recommended for fuel economy, avoiding high engine revolutions. Lower engine revolutions generally allow for greater fuel economy.



Danger

The recommendation for upshift is only an aid to the driver and not substitute the driver attention. Choosing the right gear is the driver's responsibility and depends on the driving situation, such as overtaking, towing or hilly stretches.

Four-Wheel-Drive Light




The four-wheel-drive light comes on when a vehicle with a manual transfer case is shifted into four-wheel drive and the front axle engages.

Some delay between the shifting and the light coming on is normal.


See Four-Wheel Drive.

Hill Descent Control Light




 illuminates or flashes green.

Flashes to indicate that the Hill Descent Control (HDC) is activated, reducing the vehicle's speed. This will happen in speeds between approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or approximately 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission).

Illuminates after pressing the  button to indicate that the system is enabled if vehicle speed is below than 50 km/h.

See *Hill Descent Control (HDC)*
⇨ 229.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light

 If equipped, this light, located in the center of the instrument panel, comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.


If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced.

This light is green if LDW is on and ready to operate.

This light changes to amber and flashes to indicate that the lane marking has been crossed without using a turn signal in that direction.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)*
⇨ 239.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator


 If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead.

The indicator will display amber when you are following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 232.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light



 illuminates or flashes amber.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, if the system is working normally, the control indicator goes out.

If the indicator does not go out after a few seconds, there is a fault in the system. It is possible to keep driving without Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system activated

Have the cause of the fault fixed by a Chevrolet dealer.

See *Driver Information Center (DIC)*
⇨ 81.

78 Instruments and Controls

Flashes


During ESC, TCS and/or TSC activation the DIC indicator will flash.


See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 227. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 228. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC)* ⇨ 250

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light



 illuminates amber.

When the ignition is switched on,  illuminates briefly or if it does not illuminate, seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.


It illuminates when ESC has been switched off manually by pressing the button  on the center console.

When this control indicator comes on, the Driver Information Center also displays a message.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 228 and *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ 81.

Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light



 illuminates or flashes amber.

Illuminates

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, if the system is working normally, the control indicator goes out.

If the indicator does not go out after a few seconds, there is a fault in the system. It is possible to keep driving without Traction Control System (TCS) activated.

Have the cause of the fault fixed by a Chevrolet dealer.

Flashes

During ESC, TCS and/or TSC activation the DIC indicator will flash.

See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 227. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 228. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC)* ⇨ 250

Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light

 illuminates amber.

Illuminates when the system is deactivated.

See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 227.

Pre-Heat Light




 illuminates amber.

Illuminates when preheating is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 216.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light

() For vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Center (DIC) tire pressure message may also display. See *Tire Messages* ⇨ 86. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 279.

When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ 282.

Engine Oil Pressure Light



 illuminates red.

It illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. Also illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low. In this case, the Driver Information Center also displays a message.

See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ 81.

Illuminates when the Engine is Running

Caution

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Manual transmission: depress clutch and select neutral gear.
Automatic transmission: select neutral gear by setting the selector lever to **N**.
2. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
3. Switch off ignition.

80 Instruments and Controls

Warning

When the engine is off, more force is needed to brake and steer.

Do not remove key until vehicle has come to a complete stop, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light



 illuminates amber.

It illuminates when the level in the fuel tank is low.

When this control indicator illuminates, the chime comes on and the Driver Information Center also displays a message.

See *Diesel Fuel System Bleeding*
⇨ 265 and
Driver Information Center (DIC)
⇨ 81.

Immobilizer Light



 illuminates amber.

It illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on.

This control indicator comes on if the vehicle is immobilized. This happens when an incorrect key or an unprogrammed key is used to start the vehicle. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

High-Beam On Light




 illuminates blue.

It illuminates when high beams are on and during headlight flash, see *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer*
⇨ 92.

Front Fog Lamp Light



 illuminates green.

It illuminates when the fog lights are on, see *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ 94.

Rear Fog Lamp Light



 illuminates amber.

It illuminates when the rear fog light is on, see *Rear Fog Lamps* ⇨ 95.

Lamps On Reminder




 illuminates green.

It illuminates when the exterior lights are on, see *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 91.

Cruise Control Light




 illuminates white or green.

It illuminates when the system is on, see *Cruise Control* ⇨ 230.

Trailer Indicator Light (If equipped)



 Illuminates when the trailer is connected to your vehicle. It will go out when the trailer is disconnected.

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The Driver Information Center is located on the instrument cluster. The Driver Information Center displays information about your vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected.

See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ 82.

Selecting Functions

The menus and functions can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever.

82 Instruments and Controls



Press the **MENU** button to switch between the menus.

The following menus can be selected:

- Vehicle Pages (Vehicle Information Menu)
- Trip Computer (Trip/Fuel Information Menu)
- ECO Menu (For vehicles equipped with diesel engine)

Use the adjusting knob to scroll through the items in each menu or to set a numeric value.

Press the **SET/CLR** button to select a function or to confirm a message.

See *Trip Computer* ⇨ 88.

Vehicle Messages

Messages are displayed on the Driver Information Center to notify that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed to correct the condition.

Together with the message, a chime may sound continually until the problem is solved or for just a small period of time.

Some messages may not require immediate action. For those, press **SET/CLR** button to acknowledge and clear the message.

The vehicle or engine may be seriously damaged if you keep driving while a vehicle message in the Driver Information Center comes on. Contact a Chevrolet dealer immediately.

Warning Buzzers

When Starting the Engine or While Driving

- If the seat belt is not fastened.

- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Center.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds the adjusted speed value.
- If rear parking assist is activated.

When the Vehicle is Parked and/or a Door is Opened

- Until the engine starts with the key in the ignition switch.
- With exterior lights on with the engine off.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

Battery Saver Active

This message displays when the vehicle detects that the battery voltage is low. The battery saver system may disable some vehicle features for battery saving and a

message is displayed. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

Low Battery

This message displays when the battery voltage is low.

Service Battery Charging System

This message displays when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Brake System Messages

Brake Fluid Low

This message displays when the brake fluid level is low, see *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 263.

Release Parking Brake

This message displays while the parking brake is on. Release it before driving the vehicle.

Press Brake to Start Engine

This message displays when attempting to start a vehicle equipped with automatic transmission without pressing on the brake pedal.

Cruise Control Messages

Cruise Set to (...) Km/h

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to, see *Cruise Control* ⇨ 230.

Door Ajar Messages

Door Open

This message displays when one or more door is opened. Close the doors completely.

Hood Open

This message displays when the hood is opened. Close the hood completely.

84 Instruments and Controls

Engine Cooling System Messages

Engine Overheated – Idle Engine

Stop in a safe location, shift to neutral, allow the engine to run for some seconds, and turn off the engine to avoid serious damage. This message is displayed and a continuous chime comes on if the engine cooling system reached unsafe temperatures for operation. This message will be excluded when the engine cools down to a safe temperature for operation.

Oil Pressure Low – Stop Engine

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Engine Power is Reduced

This message displays when the vehicle engine power is reduced due to an engine issue. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination.

The vehicle should be taken to a Chevrolet dealer for service as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Messages

Change Engine Oil Soon

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 258 and *Scheduled Maintenance* ⇨ 303 for more information.

Fuel System Messages

Fuel Level Low

This message displays when the fuel level of the fuel tank is low.

Water in Fuel – Contact Service

This message displays when the fuel sensor detects water in the diesel fuel. See *Diesel Fuel Filter* ⇨ 264 or seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Key and Lock Messages

X of Keys Programmed

This message displays when programming new keys to the vehicle.

Replace Battery in Remote Key

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced.

Lamp Messages

Turn Signal ON

This message displays if the turn signal has been left on. Turn off the turn signal.

Check Brake Lights

This message displays if the brake bulb needs to be replaced.

Object Detection System Messages

Park Assist Off

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled.

Service Parking Assist


This message displays if there is a problem with the Parking Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See your dealer for service.

Ride Control System Messages


Service ESP

This message displays if there is a problem with the Electronic Stability Control and/or Traction Control system. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

ESP OFF

This message displays when the Electronic Stability Control system has been switched off manually by pressing the button  on the center console.


Traction Control ON

This message displays when the Traction Control system has been switched on manually by pressing the button  on the center console.

Reduce Speed for Hill Descent Control

This message displays when HDC is in stand-by mode with vehicle speed above 30km/h and below than 50km/h.

Traction Control OFF

This message displays when the Traction Control system has been switched off manually by pressing the button  on the center console.

Airbag System Messages

Service Airbag

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a Chevrolet dealer.

Anti-theft Alarm System Messages

Theft Attempted

This message displays if the vehicle detects a tamper condition.

Service Theft Deterrent System

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle security system. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

86 Instruments and Controls

Steering System Messages (If equipped)

Steering Assist Is Reduced Drive With Care

This message may display if a problem occurs with the electric power steering system. If this message appears, steering effort may be slightly higher than normal. The vehicle is still safe to drive. Use caution while in reduced assist mode. If this message is persistent or appears repeatedly, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See *Steering* ⇨ 208.

Service Power Steering

This message displays when there is a problem with electric power steering. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet Dealership or Authorized Repair Shop. See *Steering* ⇨ 208.

Tire Messages

Service Tire Monitor System

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the system is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light* ⇨ 79. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ 282. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer.

Tire Learning Active

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the system is relearning the tire positions on your vehicle. The tire positions must be relearned after rotating the tires or after replacing a sensor. See , *Tire Rotation* ⇨ 285, *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ 280, and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 279.

Tire Pressure Low Add Air To Tire

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires is low. This message also displays with a vehicle picture to indicate the location of the low tire. The low tire pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light* ⇨ 79. You can receive more than one tire pressure message at a time. If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 279 and *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 311. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ 81.

Transmission Messages

Press Clutch to Start Engine

This message displays when attempting to start a vehicle with a manual transmission without pressing on the clutch pedal.

Service Transmission

This message displays if there is a problem with the automatic transmission. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Shift Denied

For automatic transmission, this message displays when a Tap Up/Down Switch Status transition occurs requesting a target gear that cannot be allowed in the current operating conditions.

Transmission Hot – Idle Engine

This message displays when the transmission thermal monitoring suggests that immediate action by the driver is necessary to prevent transmission failure.

Service 4WD

This message displays when there is a problem with the four-wheel drive system. Check the transfer case, front axle and/or antilock brake system on your vehicle and have it serviced by your Chevrolet dealer.

4WD Shift in Progress

This message will display while the four-wheel-drive system is shifting from 2WD to 4WD and vice-versa.

For 4WD Low Shift to Neutral

This message is available in AT vehicles only.

If a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested, and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral), this message will display until the transmission is shifted to N (Neutral).

To Exit 4WD Low Shift To Neutral

This message is available in AT vehicles only.

If a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested, and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral), this message will display until the transmission is shifted to N (Neutral).

For 4WD Low Slow To (...) Km/h

If a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested, but the vehicle speed is too high, this message will display until the correct vehicle speed is reached.

To Exit 4WD Low Slow To (...) Km/h

If a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested, but the vehicle speed is too high, this message will display until the correct vehicle speed is reached.

Vehicle In 4WD Low

This message will display if the vehicle is driven in Four-Wheel Drive Low for about 10 minutes above 63 km/h.

88 Instruments and Controls

4WD OFF

If equipped with four-wheel drive, this message displays when the four-wheel-drive system is temporarily disabled due to an overheated condition. The vehicle will run in two-wheel drive when this message is present. Once the four-wheel-drive system cools down, the message turns off and the four-wheel-drive system returns to normal operation.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

Ice Possible. Drive with Care

This message displays when ice conditions are possible.

Parking Assist Off

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ 234.

Service Parking Assist

This message displays if there is a problem with the parking assist system. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Rain sense on

This message will display on the driver information cluster when the auto rain sensor is on

Rain sense off

This message will display on the driver information cluster when the auto rain sensor is off

Vehicle Speed Messages

Selected Speed Limit Exceeded

This message displays when the vehicle speed is above the set speed.

Speed Limited to (...) Km/h

This message displays when the vehicle speed reaches the limited vehicle speed.

Trip Computer

The trip computer is located in the Driver Information Center.

The trip computer is divided into 3 sections:

- Trip Pages
- Vehicle Pages
- Eco Pages

Trip Pages

To operate the trip computer, press the **MENU** button in the turn signal lever.

Turn the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Digital Speedometer.
- Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2.
- Fuel Range.
- Instantaneous fuel economy.
- Timer.
- Outside Air Temperature.

Some modes can be reset by pressing the **SET/CLR** button.

Digital Speedometer

This mode indicates the vehicle speed.

Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2

This mode indicates the current distance travelled, average vehicle fuel consumption and average vehicle speed since the last reset.

To reset, press and hold the **SET/CLR** button.

Fuel Range

The Fuel Range display shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

When the fuel range estimate is less than 64 km, **Fuel Level Low** message will appear on the Driver Information Center and the low fuel control indicator will start to flash.

See *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ 80 and *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ 81.

The distance can be different depending on driving patterns.

Note

As an auxiliary device, the trip computer may differ from the actual distance for remaining fuel according to circumstances.

The driving distance for remaining fuel can be changed by the driver, the road, and the vehicle speed because it is calculated according to the changing fuel efficiency.

Instantaneous fuel economy.

This mode indicates the instantaneous fuel economy of the vehicle to the user reflecting the effect of acceleration on fuel consumption

Timer

The timer function measures the time that has passed since the last reset, using the elapsed time.

To reset the driving time to zero, press and hold the **SET/CLR** button for more than 1 second.

Outside Air Temperature

This mode indicates the outside temperature in Celsius (°C) degrees.

Vehicle Pages

Depending on vehicle equipment, some of the functions described below might not be available.

Press the **MENU** button on the turn signal lever until Vehicle Pages menu is displayed.

Use the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Battery Voltage.
- Coolant Temperature.
- Engine and Idle Hours.
- Transmission Fluid Temperature.
- Overspeed Warning.
- Oil Life (if available).
- Tire Pressure (if available).

90 Instruments and Controls

To change between menus, press the **MENU** button.

Battery Voltage

This display shows the current battery voltage.

Coolant Temperature

This display shows the current coolant temperature.

Engine and Idle Hours

The hourmeter is used to display the number of hours that the engine has been running.

Transmission Fluid Temperature

This display shows the current transmission fluid temperature.

Overspeed Warning

This mode allows you to set the warning signal for the desired speed.

To set the overspeed warning, press the **SET/CLR** button and use the thumbwheel to select the desired speed.

Oil Life (if available)

This display shows the current percentage of oil life.

Tire Pressure (if available)

This display shows the current tire pressure.

Tire Load (if available)

This display shows the current tire load.

The tire loads that can be selected are the following:

Light : Light loaded vehicle.

ECO : Best Economy.

Max : Heavy loaded vehicle.

Eco Pages

Press the **MENU** button on the turn signal lever until ECO menu is displayed.

Turn the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Eco Index.
- Economy Trend.
- Fuel Economy.

Eco Index

This feature provides feedback to the driver with a relative value of how fuel efficient they are driving. The percentage is determined based on current fuel consumption compared to what is expected by the calibration settings.

A leaf is shown at ECO Index Page when driving economically, for that the indicator must be in the ECO area.

Economy Trend

This page displays the average fuel consumption of the last 50 km. Each column presents the average fuel consumption of the last 5 km.

Fuel Economy

The current instantaneous fuel economy with the average and best obtained indicated by two labeled arrows. The indicator slides left and right within the bar depending the current instantaneous fuel economy. The selectable ranges are 25 km, 100 km, and 500 km.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls	91
Automatic Light Control	92
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer	92
Flash-to-Pass	93
Headlamp Range Adjustment	93
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)	93
Hazard Warning Flashers	94
Turn and Lane-Change Signals	94
Front Fog Lamps	94
Rear Fog Lamps	95
Reversing Lamps	95
Misted Lamp Covers	95

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control	95
Courtesy Lamps	96
Reading Lamps	96

Lighting Features

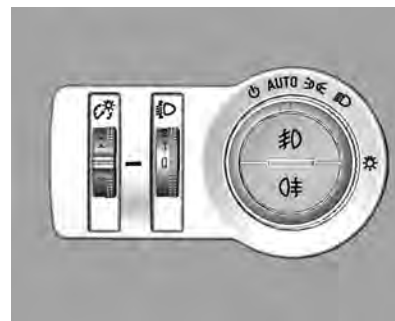
Entry Lighting	97
Exit Lighting	97

Battery Power Protection	97
--------------------------------	----

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

Light Switch with Automatic Light Control (If equipped)




Turn light switch:


☰ : With automatic light system, turn the switch to activate or deactivate the system, switch turns back to **AUTO**

AUTO : Headlights and exterior lights are switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions

92 Lighting

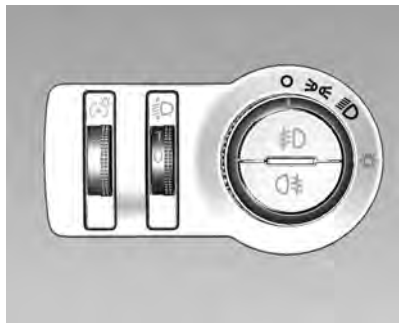
 : Sidelights, number plate lights and instrument panel lamps are illuminated

 : Headlights

When lights are on, the control indicator  lights up.


See *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ 81.

Light Switch



Turn light switch:

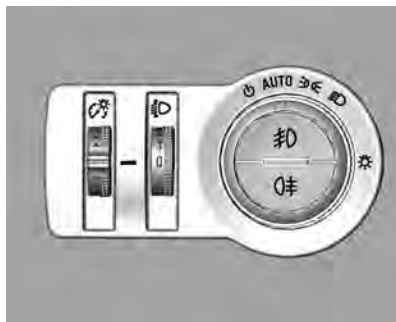
○ : Lights off

 : Position lights

 : Headlights

See *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ 81.

Automatic Light Control



When the automatic light function **AUTO** is switched on, the system switches on the headlights and taillights automatically, depending on the exterior illumination conditions.

This function operates with a short delay in dependence of lighting conditions.

If the windscreen wipers continue to operate 8 cycles when it is dark enough outside, the exterior lamps will illuminate automatically.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer



To switch from low to high beam, push the lever.

To switch to low beam, pull the lever.

Warning

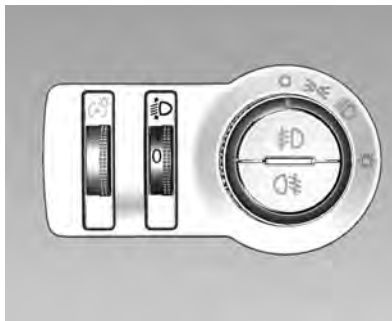
Always switch the high beam headlights to low beam when you approach oncoming vehicles or other vehicles ahead. High beam headlights can temporarily dazzle other drivers, which could result in a collision.

Flash-to-Pass

To activate the headlight flash, pull the lever.

Headlamp Range Adjustment

Manual headlight range adjustment



To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling, turn the knob to the required position.

0 or 1 : One person in the driver's seat.

1 or 2 : All the seats occupied.

2 or 3 : All seats occupied and load compartment full.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL increase the visibility of the vehicle during daylight. The DRL LEDs can operate in two different intensities:

- Normal intensity for position light
- High intensity for DRL function

The DRL operate in high intensity in the following conditions:


- The ignition is in the ON/RUN mode.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO (if available) or OFF (vehicles without AUTO light)
- The engine is running and the selector lever is not in P.

When DRL is enabled, only LED headlights will illuminate the instrument panel and other lights will not light up. The LED headlamp will change the intensity of the display automatically according to the clarity. (If there is a sun sensor) or you can adjust the position of the light switch.

94 Lighting

Hazard Warning Flashers



Operated with the  button.

Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers will activate automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Right : Lever Down

Left : Lever Up

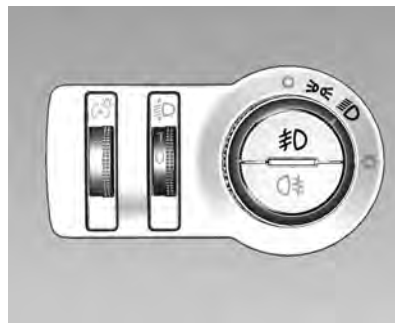
If the lever is moved past the resistance point, the indicator is switched on constantly. When the steering wheel moves back, the indicator is automatically deactivated.


For three flashes, e.g. when changing lanes, press the lever until resistance is felt and then release.

Move the lever to the resistance point and hold for longer indication.

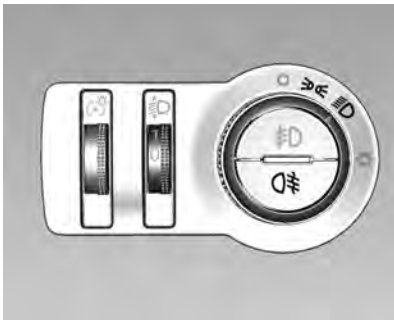
Switch the indicator off manually by moving the lever to its original position.


Front Fog Lamps




Operated with the  button when position lights or headlights are on.

Rear Fog Lamps



Operated with the  button.

Light switch in position  or when the front fog lights are on.

Reversing Lamps

The reversing lights come on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

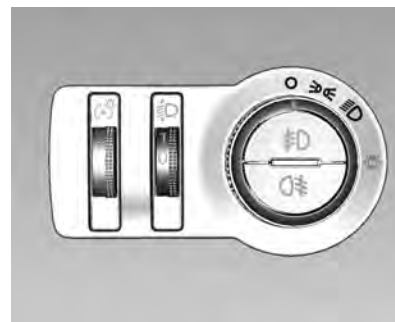
The letter **R** will appear on the Driver Information Center and the chime comes on.

Misted Lamp Covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself, switch on the headlights to help.

Interior Lighting


Instrument Panel Illumination Control



Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted when the exterior lights are on:

- Instrument panel illumination
- Driver Information Center
- Illuminated switches and operation elements

96 Lighting

Turn knob  up or down and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

Courtesy Lamps



When getting in or out of the vehicle, the courtesy lights switch on automatically and, after a short period of time, they switch off again. They switch on for a short time even if the key is withdrawn from the ignition lock.

Operate rocker switch:

DOOR : Automatic switching on and off.

ON : Always on.

OFF : Always off.

Reading Lamps



Operated with left and right buttons.



There is a parking ticket holder in the middle of the reading lights and switches. To use it, pull it down and place the ticket in.

Caution

Do not force the holder trying to fit thick amounts of paper or hanging objects, as this may cause the holder to break.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Welcome Lighting

Interior lights are switched on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the remote control. This function facilitates locating the vehicle when it is dark.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is turned to the ACC position.

See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ 214.

Entrance Lighting

Some interior lights and switches will additionally switch on when driver's door is opened.

Exit Lighting

The interior lamps will come on when the key is removed from the ignition. The lamps will not come on if the sliding button of the courtesy light is in the **OFF** position.

Headlights illuminate the way for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle. The exit lighting in the standard setting is activated 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed.

The activation time can be changed, refer to Settings in the Infotainment System.

To operate:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Remove ignition key.
3. Open driver's door.
4. Pull turn signal lever.
5. Close driver's door.

Battery Power Protection

Switching Off Electric Lights

To prevent discharge of the battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

If you turn off the ignition with the exterior lights on, they will immediately turn off. If you turn the exterior lights on when the ignition is off they will remain on.

98 Infotainment System

Infotainment System

Introduction

Introduction	99
Overview	99
Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)	102
Using the System	103

Radio

AM-FM Radio	104
Radio Reception	105
Fixed Mast Antenna	106

Audio Players

USB Port	106
Auxiliary Jack (If equipped) ...	109
Bluetooth Audio	109

Navigation

Using the Navigation System	110
Maps	115
Navigation Symbols	115
Destination	117
Settings	122
Global Positioning System (GPS)	123

Vehicle Positioning	123
Problems with Route Guidance	124
If the System Needs Service	124
Map Data Updates	125
Database Coverage Explanations	125

Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition (If equipped)	125
--	-----

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)	131
Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)	132
Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)	136
Text Messaging	137
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto	138

Settings

Settings	140
----------------	-----

Trademarks and License

Agreements

Trademarks and License Agreements	143
--	-----

Introduction

Infotainment	152
Theft-Deterrent Feature	152
Overview	152
Home Page	153
Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)	154
Operation	155

Radio

AM-FM Radio	158
Radio Reception	159
Fixed Mast Antenna	160

Audio Players

USB Port	161
Auxiliary Devices	167

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)	168
Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)	169
Hands-Free Phone	173
Hands-Free Phone (Apple CarPlay and Android Auto)	175

Trademarks and License

Agreements

Trademarks and License Agreements	176
--	-----

Introduction

Introduction	177
Theft-Deterrent Feature	178
Overview	178
Operation	179

Radio

AM-FM Radio	181
-------------------	-----

Audio Players

Auxiliary Devices	182
-------------------------	-----

Personalization

Personalization	187
-----------------------	-----

Phone

Bluetooth	188
-----------------	-----

Introduction



The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to GM, the GM logo, CHEVROLET, the CHEVROLET Emblem, COLORADO/TRAILBLAZER, and the COLORADO/TRAILBLAZER Emblem are registered trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on the vehicle because of optional equipment that was not purchased on the vehicle, model variants, country specifications, features/applications

that may not be available in your region, or changes subsequent to the printing of this manual.

Keep this manual with the owner manual in the vehicle, so it will be there if it is needed. If the vehicle is sold, leave this manual in the vehicle.

Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

100 Infotainment System

Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some

functions when driving. These functions may gray out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by presetting favorite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

See “Defensive Driving” in the owner manual.

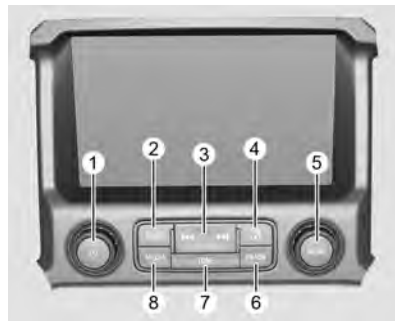
Customer Assistance

Assistance is available to help with Bluetooth pairing, application downloading and installation, other mobile device interface, and

operation support of the infotainment system. Contact your dealer for assistance.

Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by using the touchscreen, the buttons below the touchscreen, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.



1. (Power/Volume)

- Press to turn the audio on.
- Press and hold to turn it off.
- Press to mute the system. Press again to unmute.

Infotainment System 101

- Turn to increase or decrease the volume.
2. RADIO
 - Press to change the audio source between AM and FM.
 3. ⏮ or ⏭ (Seek)
 - AM and FM: Press ⏮ or ⏭ to seek to the previous or next station with good reception.
 - AM and FM: Press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to go to the desired station.
 4. 🏠 (Home Page)
 - Press to go to the Home Page from any point in the system. See "Home Page".
 5. MENU
 - Press to access the menu for the current audio source.
 - Press to select the highlighted menu option.

- Turn to scroll through a list.
 - Turn to manually select a station.
6. ◀ BACK
 - Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.
 7. TONE
 - Press TONE in the AUDIO screen to open the Tone Settings menu.
 8. MEDIA
 - Press to change the audio source between USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio, if equipped and if connected to the system.

Power (On/Off/Mute)

- Press ⏻ to turn the system on. Press again and hold to turn it off.
- Press 🔇 to mute the system. Press again to unmute the system.

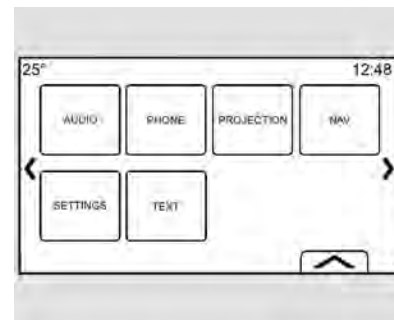
Volume

Turn 🔊 to increase or decrease the volume.

Note

When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

Home Page



The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

102 Infotainment System

The Home Page can be set up to have up to five pages with eight icons per page.

⏮ **(Previous)** : Touch to go to the previous Home Page.

⏭ **(Next)** : Touch to go to the next Home Page.


⏴ **(Interaction Selector)** : Touch to display the favorites list.

Touch and hold a location within the favorites area to begin the process of saving a favorite application.

Touch the application icon to store as a favorite. The name of the application will be shown in favorites.

Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.

4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen toward the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
6. Press  to exit edit mode.

Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)




1. **Volume** button
 - Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.

- Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.

2.  button

- Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.
- Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

3.  button

- When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold

the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.

- If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.

4. Δ ∇ (seek)

- When Δ ∇ are pressed up/down.

In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved in favorite.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.

- When Δ ∇ are pressed and held.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

Using the System

Touchscreen Buttons

Touchscreen buttons show on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may gray out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

Home Page Features

Touch the icons on the Home Page screen to launch an application.

Audio

Touch the AUDIO icon to display the active audio source page. Available sources are AM, FM, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

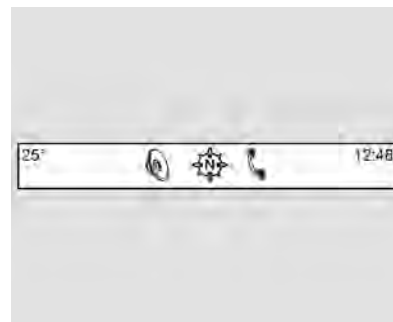
Phone

Touch the PHONE icon to display the Phone main page.
See *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* \Rightarrow 136 or
Bluetooth (Overview) \Rightarrow 131 or
Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) \Rightarrow 132.

Settings

Touch the SETTINGS icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* \Rightarrow 140.

Applications Tray



The applications tray is at the top-center of the screen. The applications tray can have three to five applications.

To add an application from the Home Page to the applications tray:

1. Touch and hold any icon on the Home Page to enter edit mode.

104 Infotainment System

2. Drag the icon to the applications tray.

To remove an item from the applications tray, drag the icon from the applications tray back to the Home Page.

Press  to exit edit mode.

Adding or removing applications from the applications tray will not remove them from the Home Page.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfiber cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfiber cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfiber cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

While on the Audio main page the available sources are: AM, FM, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

- Touch the Audio screen button on the Home Page or Radio button below the touchscreen to scroll through AM or FM.
- Touch the Media screen button on the Home Page or Media button below the touchscreen to scroll through My Media USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

Infotainment System Settings

Touch the Audio screen button to access broadcast sources.

Touch the MENU screen button to display the following menus:



Tone Settings:

- Bass, Midrange, Treble : Touch + or - to adjust.

- **Balance:** Touch < or > for more sound from the left or right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.
- **Fade:** Touch ^ or v for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.

Finding a Station



Seeking a Station

Press  or  on the faceplate to search for the previous or next station with good reception.

Direct Tune

Touch the TUNE screen button to switch to Direct Tune for manually searching for a station.

If not equipped with Direct Tune, touch the SEEK screen button to switch to TUNE. Touch again to change back. Turn the MENU knob to manually search for a station.

Press  BACK on the faceplate to return to the Home Page or touch  to return for the previous page.

Storing Radio Station Presets

Favorites are stored in the area at the bottom of the screen.

Up to 60 preset stations can be stored under the following:

AM or FM, Radio Stations : Touch and hold a favorite screen button to save the current station as a favorite. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite station.

Mixed-Audio Favorites

Favorites that can be stored include radio stations, media favorites, contacts, destinations, navigation, or applications.

To scroll through the favorites:

- Drag up on the top border of the favorites bar to view the favorites. To close the favorites, drag them down.

- Slide a finger to the right or left to scroll through each page of favorites.

Tone Settings : Touch and hold a favorite screen button in the favorite area to save the current tone settings as a favorite in the tone settings screen. Drag up on the reveal button at the bottom to bring up favorites. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite tone setting.

The number of favorites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in the Settings menu under Radio and then Number of Favorites Shown.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce

interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

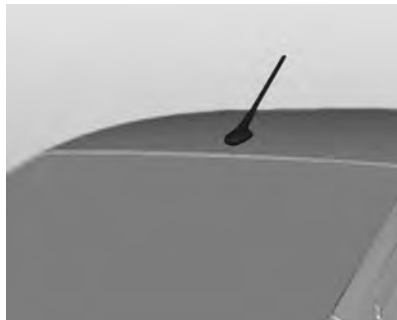
The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Cell Phone Usage

Cell phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

106 Infotainment System

Fixed Mast Antenna



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it counterclockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

Caution

To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

Audio Players

USB Port

The vehicle may have a USB port on the main storage under the armrest.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Gracenote® (If equipped)

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

My Media Library

Allows access to content from all indexed media sources. Touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll

through the options until My Media is selected. Use the screen buttons to scroll through the content.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
 - Maximum folder structure level: 11 levels.
 - Applicable audio extensions are mp3, wma, aac, m4a, and aif.
 - WMA and Apple lossless files are not supported.
 - Supported file systems are FAT32 and NTFS.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB.

- Press MEDIA until the connected device is shown.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▶ (Play) : Press to play the current media source.

|| (Pause) : Press to pause play of the current media source.

◀◀ (Previous/Reverse):

- Press to return to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than two seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than 2–5 seconds, depending on the device, the current track restarts.
- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

▶▶ (Next/Forward):

- Press to proceed to the next track.

- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

Touch Menu to display the USB menu. The following may be available:

Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Tone: Touch + or – to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 104.

USB Browse Menu

Touch anywhere between the top and bottom menus or touch the BROWSE button to view the BROWSE menu. The following options are displayed along the bottom of the screen:


Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.

108 Infotainment System

3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch  to play All Songs or touch the artist name and then select a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Select a genre to view a list of all content of that genre.
3. Select artist to view a list of albums. Select an album to view a list of songs.
4. Select a song to start playback.

Podcasts, Composers, Audiobooks, Videos, and Folder View are shown when More is selected from the bottom of the screen.

Podcasts:

1. Touch to view the podcasts on the USB.
2. Select a podcast.
3. Select an episode to start playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Select Composers to view a list of albums by that composer.

3. Select an album to view a list of songs.
4. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the device.
2. Select the audiobook from the list. Select a chapter to begin playback.

Folder View (If Equipped):

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Select a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Select a file from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Loss of Audio

If a phone currently paired over Bluetooth is plugged in with a USB cable, the system will automatically mute the Bluetooth audio. Playback can be resumed by changing the audio source from Bluetooth to USB cable.

Source USB from the Audio MEDIA screen button to resume playback.

Auxiliary Jack (If equipped)

An auxiliary input jack is provided in the center console under the armrest. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Set up an auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll through audio source screens, until AUX Input source screen displays.

Playing from the AUX Port

An auxiliary device is played through the audio system and controlled through the device itself.

AUX Menu

Touch the MEDIA screen button to display the AUX Input menu and then the following options may display:

Tone Settings : Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equalizer). See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 104.

Auto Volume : (If Equipped): This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 104.

Bluetooth Audio

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ 136 or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ 131 or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ 132 for help pairing a device.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

Music can be launched by pressing the MEDIA faceplate button or touching the MEDIA screen button on the AUDIO Home Page.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Power on the device, and pair to connect the device.

110 Infotainment System

2. Once paired, go into the audio application from the Home Page or through the applications tray. Select MEDIA until Bluetooth displays.

Bluetooth Audio Menu

Touch the MENU screen button to display the Bluetooth Audio menu. The following may be available:

Tone: Touch + or – to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 104.

Touch ◀ to go back to the previous menu.

Manage Bluetooth Devices: Touch to go to the Bluetooth page to add or delete devices.

When using the Bluetooth audio source, the radio may not be able to launch specific applications on your device. Use the device to start audio playback when it is safe to do so.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth audio as a source, the radio may show as

paused on the screen. Press play on the device or press ▶ to begin playback.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

Touch the NAV button on the Home Page or the Nav icon in the applications tray to access the navigation application.

Touch MENU from the map view or MENU button on the faceplate to access the Navigation Menu. Features displayed in the Navigation Menu can be selected to adjust navigation preferences.

It is advised to set up preferences before setting a destination. To set a destination, see *Destination* ⇨ 117.

The buttons on the infotainment screen display will time out when not interacting. Tap anywhere on the screen to reveal the controls, then select the desired control.

Additional navigation features are:

- Cancel/Resume Route
- Navigation Voice Preferences
- Current Location

- Map View
- Routing Preferences
- Display “Places of Interest” Icons
- Personal Data

Cancel/Resume Route

- While under route guidance, this screen button displays Cancel Route. Touch Cancel Route to cancel route guidance. No further prompts will be given. The list item then changes to Resume To.
- Touch the Resume To screen button to resume route guidance to the last entered destination. The last location that the system has provided guidance to can be resumed by touching on this list item.
- If the route includes waypoints, the entire route can be suspended using the Cancel Guidance list item. When Resume Guidance is touched, all waypoints are resumed for guidance.

Navigation Voice Preferences

Touch the Navigation Voice Preferences list item to adjust the voice preferences.

The following options can be adjusted:

- Voice Prompts ON-OFF
- Voice Volume
- Prompts During Phone Calls ON-OFF

Voice Prompts

Touch the Voice Prompts list item to toggle voice prompts ON and OFF.

Voice Volume

Adjust the loudness of the audio feedback by touching the – or + button. If a maneuver prompt is being played, and the main volume is adjusted, the prompt volume will update and be saved.

Prompts During Phone Calls

When enabled, the system plays a shorter prompt while on a phone call. This setting can be configured as to whether a prompt would be heard during a phone conversation.

When this setting is OFF, only the short alert tone is played when approaching the maneuver.

Current Location

Touch the Current Location list item to display a Current Location list.

The following information is displayed on the Current Location list:

- Nearest Address
- Lat/Long
- Nearest Hospital
- Nearest Police
- Nearest Fuel
- Nearest Service

Touch on any of the options to display the destination details view for the selected location to begin guidance.

112 Infotainment System

Touch the Nearest Address button and then the Save screen button to store the current location to the Address Book.

Display Places of Interest Icons

Places of Interest (POI) icons can be displayed on the map using this view.

- The POI icons can be turned ON and OFF. Touch the check box next to the POI icon to display the icon.
- Touch Clear All to reset the icons that are displayed on the map.
- A subcategory can be selected instead of the entire category. Touch the list item rather than the check box. The subcategories will display. Select any of those categories to navigate down the hierarchy.
- When a higher-level category has some of its subcategories selected, the checkmark next to it is grayed out. This indicates that only some of the categories

below are shown. Touch the grayed-out checkmark to turn all of the icons for that category on or off.

Map View

Touch to select the desired map view. A checkmark appears to indicate a view has been selected.

3D View

The 3D View is a Heading Up view but it includes perspective. Map items will appear larger as the vehicle comes closer.

Heading Up View

The Heading Up View keeps the vehicle's current heading at the top of the view. The vehicle icon always faces the top of the view as the map rotates.

North Up View

The North Up View keeps north at the top of the view. The vehicle icon is placed in the center of the view and rotates to indicate the heading for the vehicle.

Audio Information On/Off

Touch to turn the audio information view on or off from the main map view.

The audio status screen contains the following elements:

- Station Frequency
- Artist Information
- Song Information
- ► / || or ◀◀ / ▶▶ Station and Channel Controls

Touch the ◀◀ / ▶▶ Station controls to go to the next or previous strong signal station or digital channel.

When the audio status pane displays Artist and Song Information, touch the ◀◀ / ▶▶ controls to go to the next or previous track based on the current media mode.

Day/Night Mode

Touch to access the Day/Night Mode menu.

The options are:

- Day Mode: Brightens the map background.
- Night Mode: Darkens the map background.
- Automatic: Adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.

Routing Preferences

Touch the Routing Preferences list item to access the Routing Preferences menu. Options on how the routes are created for route guidance are listed on this menu.

Route Style

Touch this list item to change the route type preferences.

The options are:

- Fast (default)
- Eco Friendly (if equipped)
- Short
- Edit Eco Profile

The Edit Eco Profile can be used to configure two parameters for the Eco Friendly route. These

parameters are roof load and trailer. For each parameter, the options are None, Small, Medium, and Large. Press to scroll through the list. The default for both is None.

These preferences are used for all routes generated.

Route segment preferences are other options showing on the Routing Preferences menu.

This includes:

- Use Toll Roads ON-OFF
- Use Freeways ON-OFF
- Use Carpool Lanes ON-OFF
- Use Ferries ON-OFF
- Use Tunnels ON-OFF
- Use Time Restricted Roads ON-OFF

Personal Data

Data that the system has saved during the course of using the navigation system can be managed through:

- Contacts

- Recent Destinations
- My POIs (if equipped)
- Upload Saved Locations
- Delete Autocomplete

Contacts

1. Touch Edit Contacts to display the Contacts to edit.
2. Touch Delete All Entries to delete the entire list of contacts or touch Edit Contacts List to delete one or more items. A pop-up displays to confirm.

Recent Destinations

- Touch Delete Individual Destinations to display a recent destinations list. Select the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All Destinations to delete the entire recent destination list. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

My POIs

- Touch My POIs to display a menu of other options.

114 Infotainment System

- Select Delete Individual Categories. A My POIs category list displays.
- Select the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All My POIs to delete the entire list of categories. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.
- To exit out of a list, touch the Exit screen button in the top right corner of the map to return to the main map view.

Upload Saved Locations: Touch to upload any saved locations such as downloaded POIs and all entries in the vehicle address book to the USB device.

- Touch Upload Saved Locations to save the Vehicle Contacts list and any My POIs that have been saved to the vehicle.
- Once saved locations have been uploaded to a USB, they can be transferred to a different vehicle or restored to the current address book.

Delete Autocomplete

- Touch Delete Autocomplete to delete all keyboard autocomplete history. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

Map Adjustments

ZOOM +/- can be used to adjust the scale of view on the map. When the end of the zoom level is reached, ZOOM +/- will gray out.

The zoom scales can be configured for English or metric units. To change from English to metric, see "Instrument Cluster" in the owner manual.

Scroll Features

- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map screen.
- Nudge or slide a finger on the map; the map moves in the direction of the finger.
- Fling a finger on the map; the map will start scrolling in a short continuous scroll.

- Touch a finger on the location on the map; the map recenters to the location that was touched on.
- Touch a finger twice on a location on the map; the map zooms in one level to the location that was touched twice on.
- When the map is recentered away from being locked to the vehicle position, the crosshairs will show in the center of the map. As the map continues to be recentered, the crosshairs will remain on the screen. When the crosshairs are shown on the screen, a callout with more information displays. If the map is moved from the current location, the crosshairs will disappear along with the callout.
- Touch a finger on the callout next to the crosshairs and the destination details view displays. From this view, route guidance can be received or saved to the vehicle's contact list.

- When the map is recentered, the straight-line distance from the vehicle to the selected point is displayed in the callout. In addition, a heading direction in the form of an arrow is displayed to indicate the direction. The arrow is shown in relation to the current vehicle heading.
- Touch a finger on a POI icon shown on the map; the name of the POI is shown in the address callout, along with the city name and state. If the callout is selected, the destination details view for the POI is shown.
- After panning the map away from the vehicle, touch RESET to return the map back to the current position.
- Touch the Overview button to quickly get a view of the entire route. The route Overview button takes the place of the RESET button while under route guidance. Touch the RESET button to return the map to the current position.

Maps

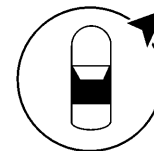
The map database is stored in the internal flash memory that is used in the navigation system.

Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, gas stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.



or



The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map. When under route guidance, a circle with an arrow is added to the vehicle symbol which indicates the direction to the destination.

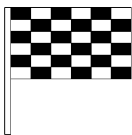
116 Infotainment System

Vehicle Address Callout

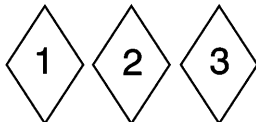
Tap on the vehicle icon, to have the current address of the vehicle overlaid on the map next to the vehicle icon in a callout. Another tap hides the information.

Any address information about the vehicle's current location will be shown, including the street, city, and state names.

Tap on this callout to save the current address to the vehicle address book.

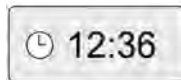


The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.



The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.



The estimated time to the destination displays. Touch the Arrival button to toggle to duration and to the distance of the destination.



This symbol indicates the recommended maneuver that should be performed. Touch it to display the turn list or waypoint list.



The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal. When the GPS is gone, the vehicle position on the map may not be accurate.

Autozoom

As a maneuver is being approached, the map automatically zooms in to give greater detail.

If lane guidance is available for the maneuver, this is also shown.

When the system begins to autozoom, it zooms in to its minimum level. After the maneuver is performed, the system slowly zooms back out.

Destination

If route guidance is not active, touch the NAV screen button on the Home Page to access the map view. Touch the Destination icon from the map view to enter a destination. Available methods of entering a destination are Address, Recent Destinations, Contacts, Intersection and POIs. Several options can be selected to plan a route. Some destination items may be grayed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

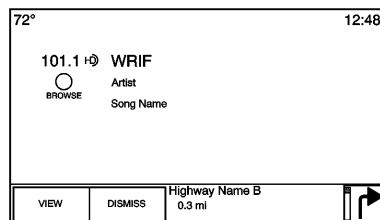
Touch the DESTINATION button to go to the destination entry views.

Available Methods of Search

- Address
- Intersection

- POIs
- Recent Destinations
- Contacts

Navigation Next Turn Maneuver Alert



The navigation system has an alert feature. The navigation system may need to get the attention of the driver.

If not in the navigation application when a near maneuver prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. The alert contains the turn indicator and button to display the main navigation view, or dismiss the alert.

The alert also contains the name of the street to turn on and a countdown bar.

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

The keyboard is used in multiple locations throughout the system and can be used with many features.

The navigation system uses the keyboard's alpha-numeric keyboard.

The keyboard can also be modified to include characters appropriate for the region configured in the vehicle settings.

✓ **GO** : Touch to search for the destination details of an address or place of interest entered in the text field. Once the GO screen button is pressed, the activity indicator displays in the list of possible matches.

▽ (**Dropdown Arrow**) : Touch to display a list of matches.

When there are multiple matches, a dropdown arrow is shown after the autocomplete text. This dropdown displays an entire list of matches. Touch the appropriate match without having to enter more text.

118 Infotainment System

X (Delete) : Touch to delete the last typed character. Press and hold this screen button to clear the entire text field. If the entire text field has been deleted, this screen button becomes an Undo button. Touching Undo will restore the deleted text.

Exit : Touch to return to the previous Map view.

Sym : Touch to show the symbol keyboard.

Space : Touch to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

^ (Up Arrow) : Touch to display the Interaction Selector.

Special Characters

As the characters are typed on the keyboard, a pop-up of the letter touched displays above the key that was touched.

Continue to touch and hold, and any additional special characters associated with that letter are displayed around the current letter.

To select one of the special characters, slide a finger left or right to select the special character.

Special Character List

The following characters have special characters beneath them:

E - É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï	More Characters:
Y - Ÿ	0 - °
U - Û Ü Ù Ú Û	! - ¡
I - Ì Í Î Ï	\$ - ¥ £ ¢
O - Ø Æ Ö Ö Ö Ö Ö	& - §
A - Å Ä Å Æ Å Å Å	" - « »
S - ß (for lowercase s) Š š	? - ¿
L - Ł	{ - { }
Z - Ž ž) - } }
C - Č č	.com - .net .org
N - Ň ň	
. - .	

Saved Destinations

Select a saved destination from the Contacts or Recent Destinations.

Contacts

Select the CONTACTS button to view the vehicle's contact list or a connected Bluetooth device. If a particular contact has a single address associated with it, that contact has a Quick Route list item function button next to it. Contacts without this Quick Route button

either have multiple addresses or no address at all. Touch the Quick Route button to go to the Destination Details view.

Touch on an address, either from the Quick Route on the contact list or a specific address from the contact detail list, to go to the destination view showing that address on the map.

Trips from Contacts can be saved and recalled. The order is based on when the trip was last used. When the trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination name. If there are no saved trips, this list item is hidden.

Favorite Destinations

- Destinations can be saved as Favorites for recall later. Depending on the favorite, when an address or POI favorite is recalled, the Destination Details View is shown.
- When a favorite address is being routed to, it is shown active. Touch on the active favorite to suspend that route.

- Save locations as Favorites for recall later in the Destination Details View.
- Save trips from the Address Book.

Storing Favorites from the Contact Details List

A contact name or any of the contact's information such as phone number, e-mail address, or address from Contact Details can be stored as a Favorite.

- Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favorite buttons.
- Touch and hold on the favorite location while viewing a contact on the Contact Details List. The contact name and all contact information can be stored.
- Touch to save as a favorite. The favorite label will be the name of the contact.
- Touch on the Favorite to display the destination view.

Storing Favorites from Map

Favorite locations can be stored from the Map View.

If not under route guidance, the current vehicle location will be saved as a Favorite. If under route guidance, the final destination will be saved.

Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favorite buttons. Touch and hold on the favorite location from the Map View to save it.

Route Guidance

- Touch GO to go to the main navigation view and to start route guidance.
- If the system has an active route, a pop-up will display, "What would you like to do with this destination?" The options are: Add As Waypoint, Set New Destination, or Cancel.
- If a waypoint is added, it is placed in the location that leads to the most efficient route.

- There is a maximum number of waypoints that can be added to the system. When the maximum number of waypoints has been reached, a pop-up displays indicating that a waypoint must first be deleted before a new one can be added. The system will hold this waypoint into a Pending Waypoints list and will automatically be added to the route once a position is available, either by arriving at a waypoint, or by deleting one.
- To save a location, tap on the ▲ to display the Favorite buttons. Touch and hold on a favorite location to save the shown location as a Favorite.

Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and Distance

- When under route guidance, the system shows the ETA or travel time, or the driving distance.
- The ETA and travel time are calculated using any available traffic information.

120 Infotainment System

- If in a waypoint trip, the ETA, travel time, and driving distance are all shown relative to the final destination.
- The final ETA is shown taking into consideration any time zone crossings that the route has traveled through.
- Touch the ETA information area to switch between the estimated arrival time, total driving time resulting, and driving distance.

Turn List

Touch on the next turn indicator shown on the map to display the turn list or waypoint list. The Interaction Selector is minimized automatically. Touch ▲ to reveal the following options:

Destination

Touch the DESTINATION screen button to add a waypoint or change the destination while viewing the turn list. When the DESTINATION screen button is touched, the display shows the Destination screens.

End Guidance

Touch the End screen button to suspend the current route in the turn list. When the End screen button is touched, the turn list is exited, and the display returns to the main map view.

Avoid Areas

Touch the Avoid Areas screen button to select the highway name that is to be avoided. The system shows a pop-up asking how many miles or if the entire road should be avoided.

Turn List

- When under a waypoint trip, touch on the TURN LIST Interaction Selector button to show the turn list. When entering a turn list, the next maneuver instruction is spoken.
- The turn list title is the name or address of the destination. Touch on the information button next to the name of the destination to display the destination information.

- The turn list is sorted in order with the next maneuver at the top of the list and the subsequent maneuvers listed below it. The next maneuver is always highlighted upon entry into the Turn List to quickly show what the next maneuver is.
- Each maneuver indicates the distance between it and the previous maneuver or the vehicle's current location. The next maneuver at the top will count down until the maneuver is reached, and then the next maneuver will begin to count down.
- Each maneuver has an estimated time of arrival based on the current driving conditions.

Saved Trips

Waypoint trips can be saved for later recall. Touch the + add button in the waypoints list to save the trip to the Saved Trips list in the vehicle's contacts list. When trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination. Saved

trips can be edited by selecting the Edit list item button to access the edit screen for the saved entry. The only field that can be edited is the name field. Touch on the name field to access the keyboard view. Type the name change. This change is automatically saved when executed by the keyboard.

The saved trip can also be deleted from the edit mode. Touch the delete button and a delete confirmation pop-up will display.

Waypoints

- When under a waypoint trip, touch on the next turn indicator to bring up the waypoint list. The last waypoint view is shown, which could be Waypoints, Turn List, or Edit.
- The waypoint list is sorted in order with the next waypoint at the top of the list. Each waypoint is indicated with a numbered icon, starting with the next waypoint.

- To indicate what segment of the route is for the next waypoint, and what is for the remainder of the route, they appear in different colors.

Optimized Route

- Touch the OPTIMIZE screen button to optimize the current waypoint trip.
- The optimization is done according to how the preferences are set for new routes, e.g., fastest route, shortest distance, or eco friendly.
- While the system is optimizing the route, the waypoint trip has the Activity Indicator displayed over top of it. If the system is calculating the ETA and travel distance for a waypoint, the Activity Indicator is displayed in the list header.
- When either a waypoint trip is first created, or additional waypoints are added to an existing waypoint trip, they are added in the location that would lead to an optimized route.

- If a destination is already planned and a waypoint is added, it is either added before or after the current destination, whichever leads to the most optimal route.
- If under an existing waypoint trip consisting of two or more destinations, any additional waypoints are added in the location that would lead to the most optimal route.

Edit Route

- Touch the EDIT screen button to modify the order or remove a waypoint from the route. Press the delete screen button to remove a waypoint from the route.
- A pop-up displays asking for confirmation of the waypoint deletion.

122 Infotainment System

Settings

Touch Settings on the Home Page to adjust features and preferences, such as Time and Date, Language, Valet Mode, or Radio. For setting options, see *Settings* ⇨ 140.

A few of the setting options change the way the navigation system displays or reacts while in use.

1. Touch the Settings screen button on the Home Page.
2. Touch the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change.

Voice

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. See *Voice Recognition (If equipped)* ⇨ 125.

Touch the voice screen button to display the Voice menu.

Confidence Threshold : Touch to change the confidence threshold to Confirm More or Confirm Less.

Prompt Length : Touch to change the prompt length to Short or Long.

Audio Feedback Speed : Touch to change the audio feedback speed to Slow, Medium, or Fast.

Display “What can I say?” Tips : Touch to change the display tips to ON or OFF.

Display

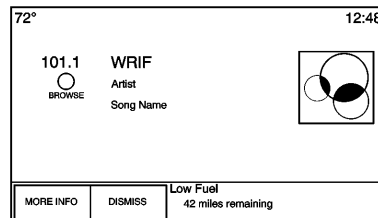
Mode : Touch Mode to change the screen background. This setting controls map colors.

- The Auto setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.
- The Day setting brightens the map background.
- The Night setting darkens the map background.

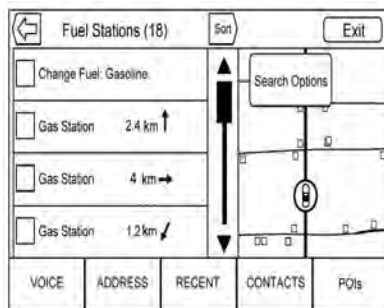
Calibrate Touchscreen : Touch to display the Touchscreen Calibration Screen.

Turn Display Off : Touch to turn the Display option off.

Low Fuel Alert



If the vehicle reaches a low fuel level, the system displays an alert about the low fuel condition. Touch the MORE INFO screen button to view nearby gas stations, and start guidance if desired.



If the remaining driving distance is available from the system, this is included in the alert.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances

can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ 115.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ 124 and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ 124.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is traveling on winding roads or long straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is traveling at high speed.

124 Infotainment System

- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tire chains have been installed.
- The tires are replaced or worn.
- The tire pressure for the tires is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.

- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ 115.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ 124.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data can be updated, provided that the map information has changed.



For questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, contact your dealership.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ 125.

Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition (If equipped)

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. This feature can be started by pressing either the  button on the steering wheel or touching  on the touchscreen display.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.



For example, tasks that take more than one or two button presses such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down are audio features that are easily


performed by pressing one or two buttons, and are not supported by voice commands.

Voice recognition can be used just when the ignition is on.


Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialized. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialization may take a few moments.

1. Press  on the steering wheel control to activate voice recognition, or touch  on the infotainment touchscreen on the center stack.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
3. Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

Press  to interrupt any voice recognition system prompt. For example, if the prompt seems

126 Infotainment System

to be taking too long to finish, press  again and the beep should happen right away.

There are two voice prompt modes supported:

- Long verbal prompts: The longer prompts provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: The short prompts provide simple instructions about what can be stated.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Screen Displays


While a voice recognition session is active, there will be corresponding buttons on screens displayed. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands, or some selections may expedite a session. If a selection is made using a

manual control, the dialog will progress in the same way as if the selection was made through a voice command. Once the system is able to complete the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching on an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Canceling Voice Recognition

- Touch the Home screen button. Pressing this button will terminate a voice recognition session which was initiated by pressing the button on the radio touchscreen.
- Touch or say “Cancel” or “Exit” to terminate the voice recognition session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.

- Press  on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are either naturally stated in sentence form, or direct commands that state the application and the task.

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the examples shown on the display.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or reply.
- Say “Help” or look at the screen display for example commands.

- A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing **⏏**.
For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press **⏏**.
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow. Use direct commands without a lot of extra words.
- Usually Phone and Audio commands can be spoken in a single command.
For example say, "Call Dave Smith at work," "Play" followed by the artist or song name, or "Tune" followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations are too complex for a single command. First, say a command that explains the type of destination needed, such as I want directions to an "Address," "Navigate to an intersection," "I

need to find a Place of Interest or POI," or "Directions to a Contact." The system responds by requesting more details. After saying "Place of Interest," only major chains are available by name. Chains are businesses with at least 20 locations. For other POIs, say the name of a category like "Restaurants," "Shopping Malls," or "Hospitals."

There is no need to memorize specific command words. Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be "Call 555-1212." Examples of these direct commands are displayed on most of the screens while a voice session is active. If "Phone" or "Phone Commands," is stated, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered.

If the phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example "Call Dave Smith at work."

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list. A selection can be made by manually selecting the item, or by speaking the line number for the item to select.

When a screen contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other screens. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a screen during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt "Make your

128 Infotainment System

selection from the list using the manual controls or press the Back button to try again.”

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The screen returns back to the screen where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command


Say “Back” or press the BACK button to go to the previous screen.

If in voice recognition, and “Back” is stated all the way through to the initial screen, then “Back” is stated one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.


Help

Say “Help” on any voice recognition screen and the help prompt for the screen is played. Additionally, a pop-up displays a text version of the help prompt. Depending on how voice recognition was initiated, the Help pop-up will either display on the instrument cluster or the

infotainment touchscreen. Touch the Dismiss button to make the pop-up go away.

Pressing  while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

Some audio screens have a voice recognition button () to launch audio voice recognition. If the voice button is touched in a radio screen, the voice commands for radio and media features are available.

“Switch to AM” : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

“Switch to FM” : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “nine fifty”).

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM” :

Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one o one point one”).

Voice Recognition for Audio My Media

If browsing My Media when the voice button is selected, the voice recognition commands for My Media features are available.

“Play Artist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

“Play Artist <artist name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Album” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

“Play Album <album name>” : Begin playback of the identified album name in the command.

“Play Song” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

“Play Song <song name>” : Begin playback of the identified song name in the command.

“Play Genre” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

“Play Genre <genre name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Playlist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

“Play Playlist <playlist name>” : Begin playback of the identified playlist in the command.

“Play <device name>” : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name displayed on the screen when the device is first selected as an audio sourced.

“Play Chapter” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Chapter <chapter name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Audiobook” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Audiobook <audiobook name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Episode” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Episode <episode name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Podcast” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Podcast <podcast name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“My Media” : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of song titles by voice at the highest level if the number of songs exceeds the maximum limit.

Voice command option changes through media content limits are:

- Song files including other individual files of all media types such as audiobook chapters and podcast episodes.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of song files and albums is less than 4,000. When the number of song files connected to the system is between 4,000 and 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like “Play <song name>.”

The restriction is that the command “Play Song” must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 4,000 albums, but less than 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, “Play <album name>.” The

130 Infotainment System

command "Play Album" must first be spoken; the system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of songs has exceeded approximately 8,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 4,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initializing process.

Voice Recognition for Navigation

Note

The Navigation Speech Recognition is not available when the radio is set on English language.

"Navigation" : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Navigation Commands" : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Destination Address" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, and city and state.

"Destination Intersection" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination intersection.

"Destination Place of Interest" : Begin a dialog to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name (if equipped).

Not all brand names of businesses are available for voice entry. Most major chains, such as chains with more than 20 locations, should be available to search for by name, but the name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as fast food, hotels, or banks.

"Destination Contact" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination contact name.

"Cancel Route" : End route guidance.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

"Call <contact name>" : Initiate a call to an entered contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

"Call <contact name> At Home," "At Work," "On Mobile," or "On Other" : Initiate a call to an entered

contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

“Call <phone number>” : Initiate a call to a standard phone number seven or 10 digits in length.


“Pair Phone” : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow instructions on the radio display.

“Switch Phone” : Select a different phone for outgoing calls.

“Voice Keypad” : Begins a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command “Delete” will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command “Call” will start dialing the number.

“Voice Mail” : Initiate a call to voice mail numbers.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone, for example, Siri or Voice Command. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature. To activate the phone voice recognition system, press and hold  on the steering wheel for a few seconds.

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many cell phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the cell phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

132 Infotainment System

- Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all cell phones. See “Pairing” in this section.

Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

Danger

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.


Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.


Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

 **(Push to Talk)** : Press to answer incoming calls, confirm system information, and start voice recognition.

 **(End Call)** : Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ 103.

Phone : Touch this screen button on the Home Page to enter the phone main menu.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Turn the volume knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ 103.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a phone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- The pairing mode will be disabled when the vehicle is moved.
- One Bluetooth device can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.

- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired cell phone in the order that they were last used in the system. To link to a different paired phone, see "Linking to a Different Phone" later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phone and select Pair Device.
3. A four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) appears on the display. The PIN, if required, may be used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the cell phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.
5. Locate "Chevrolet MyLink" on the display. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN provided in

Step 3 or confirm the six-digit code shown on the display. After the PIN is successfully entered or the code is confirmed, the system responds with "<Device name> has been successfully paired" when the pairing process is complete.

6. If "Chevrolet MyLink" does not appear, turn the phone off or remove the phone battery and retry.
7. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select always accept and allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
8. Repeat Steps 1–7 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.

134 Infotainment System

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.
3. Touch the **X** next to the phone to disconnect and follow the on screen prompts.

Deleting a Paired Phone

Only disconnected phones can be deleted.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.
3. Touch the **⊖** next to the phone to delete and follow the on screen prompts.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.

3. Select the new phone to link to from the not connected device list.

Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display "Call View."

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset screen button to switch to the handset mode. The screen button changes to Handsfree once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handset.
- While the active call is handset, touch the Handsfree screen button to switch to the hands free mode. The screen button changes to Handset once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handsfree.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal cell phone contact information for all phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the phone settings and operation. Verify the cell phone supports this feature.

When supported, the Contacts and Recent Calls menus are automatically available.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the cell phone.

The Recent Calls menu accesses the recent call list(s) from your cell phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Contacts.
3. Select the name to call.
4. Select the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recent Calls menu:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Recent.
3. Select the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialing the numbers:


1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Select Call to start dialing the number.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.


Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the center stack display.

Declining a Call

There are a few ways to decline a call:


- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the center stack display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.


Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call-waiting call:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Switch on the center stack display.

Declining a Call

There are a few ways to decline a call-waiting call:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the center stack display.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the phone icon on the Home Page to display "Call View." While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.


To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, select Add to add another call.

136 Infotainment System

2. Initiate the second call by selecting from RECENT, CONTACTS, or KEYPAD.
3. When the second call is active, touch Merge to conference the three-way call together.
4. Once all calls are merged, the Merge button becomes an Unmerge button. Touch to unmerge the calls. Some wireless service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.


Ending a Call

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch End on the center stack display to end all existing calls, or touch End next to a call to end only that call.

Some wireless service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. While in the Call View, touch  to raise the Interaction Selector.
3. Select Keypad and enter the number.

Voice Mail

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.


To dial a voice mail number:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Voice Mail.
3. Select Call.

4. Enter the DTMF tones using the keypad if needed.

Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)

Using Bluetooth Voice Recognition


To use voice recognition, press the  button on the steering wheel. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say “Help” while in a voice recognition menu. See *Voice Recognition (If equipped)* ⇨ 125 for help using voice recognition commands.

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Using the “Dial” or “Call” Command

To call a number:


1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.

2. Say "Dial" or "Call" followed by the complete phone number.

Use the "Voice Keypad" command for international numbers or special numbers which include * or #.


Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

To call using a contact from your phone book:

1. Press . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Dial" or "Call" and then say the contact name. For example "Call John at Work."


Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Switch Phone" Command


1. Press . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.

2. After the tone, say "Switch Phone." The system displays a list of phones to select.

Using the "Voice Keypad" Command

1. Press . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say "Voice Keypad." The system allows entry of special numbers and characters.

Using the "Voice Mail" Command

1. Press . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say "Voice Mail." The system dials the voice mail number of the connected phone.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained. This includes phone

pairing information. For directions on how to delete this information, see "Deleting a Paired Phone."

Text Messaging


If equipped, the infotainment system may allow text messages to be received and replied to. Received messages can also be read aloud.

Before using the text messaging feature, check to see if the phone is compatible.

See your dealer for details.

Text Menu

Inbox : Touch to display incoming messages. To view a message, press on the name of the sender.

Press  to listen to the text message. Press BACK on the faceplate or press the Back screen button to go back to the previous menu.

Settings : See "Text Settings" later in this section.

138 Infotainment System

Reply : Touch to reply using a predefined text message. See “Text Settings.”

Call : Touch to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Note

- There may be previous configuration required in your mobile to have this function working properly.
- Due to the variety of devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing this function.
- Any inquiries regarding your phone functionality, refer to the device manual.

Viewing a Text Message

While viewing a text message:

- Touch Reply to reply using a predefined text message.
- Touch Call to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Viewing Sender Information

If equipped, touch the name of the sender to view sender information if this information matches contact information already stored.

Select a Predefined Message :

Touch to select from a set of quick messages. Touch the message to send.

Predefined Messages


These are short text messages that can be used to send so responses will not have to be typed.

The messages can be deleted or a new message can be added.

To add a new message:

1. Touch Text Settings, then press Manage Predefined Messages.
2. While in the predefined messages list view, select Add New Predefined Message and a keyboard displays.
3. Type a new message and touch the Check button when done to add the message. Press BACK on the faceplate

or touch the Back screen button to go back to the predefined messages list.

4. Touch  to delete a predefined message

Memory Full

This message may display if there is no more room on the phone to store messages.

Text Settings

Text Alerts : When on, this feature will display an alert when a new text message has been received. Touch to turn on or off.

Manage Predefined Messages :

Touch to add, change, or delete predefined messages.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, a

PROJECTION icon will appear on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google™ Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

The PROJECTION icon on the Home Page will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the ANDROID AUTO and/or APPLE CARPLAY icon on the Home Page to launch.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy.

For Android Auto support see <https://support.google.com/androidauto> or Apple CarPlay support at <https://www.apple.com/br/ios/carplay/>. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

If Android Auto device is connected while another device was paired, the switch devices pop up message will appear as following:

"Connecting Android Auto, will disconnect Bluetooth Device (Friendly Name Bluetooth)."

Note

For using Android Auto function, the date of Infotainment System should be the same as the Android Auto device.

Note

For your safety, some applications are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

Note

To end Android Auto, disconnect the phone from the USB port or change the USB setting on the phone .

In some cases, it might be necessary to unpair the phone from the radio before plugging the USB cable to start the Android Auto.

If Android Auto does not start after plugged in the compatible device make sure that the android auto and USB autorun in the settings menu is working or not working.

140 Infotainment System

Settings

Note

Depending on vehicle version and market, some of the functions described below might not be available.

The Settings menu allows adjustment of different vehicle and radio features. The menu may contain the following:

Time and Date

Touch SET TIME to edit the time and then touch \wedge or \vee to increase or decrease hours, minutes, and AM or PM. Press 12Hr or 24Hr for 12 or 24 hour clock.

Touch SET DATE to edit the date and then press \wedge or \vee to increase or decrease month, day, or year.

Touch CLOCK DISPLAY to choose ON or OFF to show the time in the screen.

Language

This will set the display language in the radio, instrument panel, and voice recognition. Press Language and select the appropriate language. Press \leftarrow to go back to the previous menu.

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit top speed, power, and access to vehicle storage locations (if equipped).

To enable valet mode:


1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Touch Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch LOCK or UNLOCK to lock or unlock the system. Touch \leftarrow to go back to the previous menu.

Radio

Touch to display the Radio Menu and the following may display:

- **Manage Favorites:** Touch to highlight a favorite to edit. Touch Rename to rename the favorite or Delete to delete it. Touch and hold the station to drag it to a new location. Touch Done to go back to the previous menu.
- **Number of Favorites Shown:** Touch to set the number of favorites to display. Select Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, or 60. Auto will adjust the number of favorite locations that can be seen. Touch \leftarrow to go back to the previous menu.
- **Audible Touch Feedback:** This feature adjusts the sound of the touch. This feature can be turned ON or OFF.
- **Auto Volume:** If equipped, this feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 104.
- **Maximum Startup Volume:** This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the

volume is adjusted to this level. To set the maximum startup volume, touch + or – to increase or decrease. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.

Vehicle

1. Press Settings on main screen of Infotainment System.
2. Select Vehicle menu.
3. The following items will display:
 - Climate and Air Quality.
 - Collision / Detection Systems.
 - Comfort and Convenience.
 - Lighting.
 - Power Door Locks.
 - Remote Lock, Unlock, Start.

Climate and Air Quality

- Auto Fan Speed.
 - Select the desired option from the list.
- Auto Rear Defog (if equipped).
 - Select On or Off.

Collision / Detection Systems

- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (if equipped).
 - Select On or Off.
- Side Blind Zone Alert (if equipped).
 - Select On or Off.

Comfort and Convenience

- Chime Volume.
 - Press – or + to set the chime volume.
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear (If equipped).
 - Select On or Off.

Lighting

- Vehicle Locator Lights.
 - Select On or Off.
- Exit Lighting.
 - Select the desired option from the list.

Power Door Locks

- Auto Door Lock.

- Select On or Off.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start




- Remote Unlock Light Feedback.
 - Select Off or Flash Lights.
- Remote Lock Feedback.
 - Select the desired option from the list.
- Remote Door Unlock.
 - Select All Doors or Driver Door.
- Relock Remote Unlocked Doors.
 - Select On or Off.
- Remote Window Operation.
 - Select On or Off.

Bluetooth

From the Bluetooth screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Pair New Device: Touch to add a new device.
- Device Management: Touch to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.

142 Infotainment System



- **Ringtones:** Touch to change the ring tone for the specific phone. The phone does not need to be connected to change the ring tone.
- **Voice Mail Numbers:** This feature displays the voice mail number for all connected phones. The voice mail number may be changed by touching the EDIT button, typing in the new number, and touching SAVE. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.
- **Text Message Alerts:** This feature will turn text message alerts on or off. Touch Text Message Alerts and then select OFF or ON. Touch  to go back to the previous menu. See *Text Messaging*  137.

Voice

From the Voice screen button, the following may be displayed:


- **Confidence Threshold:** Select Confirm More for a system response to a command. Select

Confirm Less for the system to proceed with the command without responding.

- **Prompt Length:** Select Short for brief, direct feedback or Long for more information feedback. Touch  Back to go to the previous menu.
- **Audio Feedback Speed:** Touch Slow, Medium, or Fast for feedback speed. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.
- **Display “What can I say?” Tips:** Touch ON or OFF to change the display tips.

Display

From the Display screen button, the following may be displayed:

- **Calibrate Touchscreen:** Touch to calibrate the touchscreen and follow the prompts. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.

- **Turn Display Off:** Touch to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the display area or any faceplate button again to turn the display on.

Rear Camera

Touch to display the Rear Camera menu. See “Driver Assistance Systems” in the owner manual.

- **Guidance Lines:** This feature can be turn ON or OFF.
- **Rear Park Assist Symbols:** This feature can be turn ON or OFF.

Return to Factory Settings

Touching Continue restores all factory settings.

Select Return to Factory Settings and the following list may display:

- **Restore Vehicle Settings:** Restores factory vehicle settings. Touch Restore Vehicle Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched, a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the vehicle settings have been restored.

- **Clear All Private Data:** If available, use to erase personal private data before loaning or selling the vehicle. Touch Clear All Private Data. Touch Cancel or Continue. Touch the ◀ Back screen button to go back to the last menu.
- **Restore Radio Settings:** Restores factory radio settings. Touch Restore Radio Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched, a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the radio settings have been restored.

Press ◀ BACK on the faceplate or touch the Back screen button to go back to the main settings menu.

Trademarks and License Agreements

Made for



"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone®, iPod®, iPod classic®, iPod nano®, iPod shuffle®, and iPod touch® are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

RMVB



Portions of this software are included under license from RealNetworks, Inc. Copyright 1995-2012, RealNetworks, Inc. All rights reserved

Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

144 Infotainment System

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA (if equipped)



Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDb, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and

the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such

content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote

Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that

Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR

INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4-AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://WWW.MPEGLA.COM).

146 Infotainment System

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://WWW.MPEGLA.COM).

MPEG4-Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR

USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Map End User License Agreement

END USER TERMS

The Map Data Disc ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC ("HERE") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

HERE holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

© United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled, or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only

be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting

comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN “AS IS” AND “WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS” AND BOSCH (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED

148 Infotainment System

WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY BOSCH (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY

OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois

for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

The logo for HERE, featuring the word "here" in a bold, lowercase, sans-serif font, tilted at an angle.

Maps for Life

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

**425 West Randolph Street,
Chicago, IL 60606.**

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC.
All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE North America, LLC prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2014 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in <http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html>.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2014 The FreeType Project (<http://www.freetype.org>). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

The open source code used in this device can be downloaded at the webpage shown in the information at the center stack display. Further information concerning the OSS licenses is shown in the center stack display.

150 Infotainment System

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2014, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2014, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law,

you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR

CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU

UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at <http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html>.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

152 Infotainment System

Introduction

Infotainment

Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.



Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may gray out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by presetting favorite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by touching a single

button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ 204.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The infotainment system has an electronic security system installed to prevent theft.

The infotainment system only works in the vehicle in which it was first installed, and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview



1. 

- Press to turn the power on.
- Press and hold to turn the power off.
- Press to mute the system when on.
- Turn to decrease or increase the volume.

2. 

- Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.
- USB/Bluetooth Music/Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the next content. Press and hold to fast forward.

3. 

- Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.

- USB/Bluetooth Music/Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the previous content. Press and hold to fast rewind.

4. 

- Press to go to the Home Page. See *Home Page* ⇨ 153.

5. 

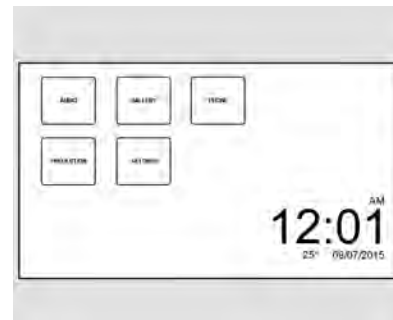
- Press this button to access the Phone screen. (If there is no connected phone, the monitor will show the Device Management Menu to allow you to connect a previously paired phone or establish a new Bluetooth enabled phone connection.)


Home Page

Touchscreen Buttons

Touchscreen buttons show on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may gray out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

Home Page Features



Press  to go to the Home Page.

Audio : Touch to select AM, FM, USB/iPod/Bluetooth Audio, or AUX.

Gallery : Touch to view a picture or watch a movie.

154 Infotainment System

Phone : Touch to activate the phone features (if equipped). See *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ 136 or



Bluetooth (Overview) ⇨ 131 or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ 132.

Projection : Touch to access supported devices when connected. See *USB Port* ⇨ 106.

Settings : Touch to access the Settings menu. See *Operation* ⇨ 155.

Edit Mode

In edit mode, the home page can be rearranged.

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. Press and hold the any menu to enter the edit mode.
3. Drag and drop the desired menu to change the position.
4. Press  to exit the edit mode.

Note

- The edit mode exits after a timeout of inactivity of 30 seconds.
- If you drag and drop the menu on the arrow, the menu will be arranged on the previous or next page.
- The maximum number of edit mode pages is three.

Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)



1. Volume button

- Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.
- Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.

2. button

- Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.
- Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.



3. button

- When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.



- If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.

4.   (seek)

- When   are pressed up/down.

In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved in favorite.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.

- When   are pressed and held.


In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

Operation

Radio Controls

The infotainment system is operated by using the pushbuttons, menus shown on the display, and steering wheel controls.

Turning the System On or Off


 : Press to turn the radio on.
Press and hold to turn the radio off.

Automatic Switch-Off

If the infotainment system has been turned on after the ignition is turned off, the system will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

If the ignition is turned off and the user opens the driver door of the vehicle, the system is turned off automatically.

Volume Control

 : Turn to increase or decrease.
Press when the system is on to mute and unmute the system.

Note



When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

Radio Settings


Auto Volume

This feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise.

The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the feature can be turned off.

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Select Auto Volume.
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Touch  to go back to the source screen.

Tone Settings

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Touch Tone Settings.

156 Infotainment System

4. Select a Preset tone setting or a Custom tone setting and the Fader/Balance:

Preset


- Talk, Rock, Jazz, Pop, Country, Classical, or Custom.

Custom



- Bass, Midrange, or Treble: Touch – or +.

Fader or Balance



- Adjust the front/rear or left/right speakers by dragging the dot in the vehicle image on the screen.

5. Touch  to go back to the source screen.





Setting the 12/24 Hour Format

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then select 12h or 24h format.
3. Touch .


Setting the Month and Day Format

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Date Format.
3. Select DD/MM/YYYY (day/month/year), MM/DD/YYYY (month/day/year), or YYYY/MM/DD (year/month/day) format.
4. Touch .


Setting the Time and Date

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Time or Set Date.
3. Touch + or – to adjust the value.
4. Touch  or  to adjust AM or PM for 12 hour format.
5. Touch  to go back to the source screen.


Manage Favorites

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Touch Manage Favorites, then select the number of favorite list on the radio screen.


Audible Touch Feedback

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Turn on or off the Audible Touch Feedback.


Text Scroll

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Turn on or off the Text Scroll.


Maximum Startup Volume

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Touch Maximum Startup Volume, then set between 13 to 37.

Language


1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Language.
3. Select language displayed on the Infotainment system.

Vehicle

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Vehicle.
3. Touch the desired item:
 - Comfort and Convenience: Set Chime volume
 - Lighting: Set the desired Exit Lighting timing.
 - Power Door Locks: Turn Auto Door Lock on or off.
 - Remote Lock, Unlock, Start:
 - Remote Unlock Light Feedback: Select Off or Flash Lights.
 - Remote Lock Feedback: Select the desired option from the list.


- Remote Door Unlock: Select All Doors or Driver Door
- Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors: Select on or off.
- Remote Window Operation: Select on or off.

Bluetooth


1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Bluetooth.
3. Touch the desired item:
 - Device Information: Check the device information.
 - Device management: Select the desired device and connect/disconnect or delete.
 - Change Pairing PIN: Manually change/set the PIN code.
 - Ringtones: Change the ringtone.

- Sort Order: Change the sorting order of contacts. (First/Last or Last/First)
- Voice Mail Numbers: Change the voice mail number.

Apple CarPlay (If available)

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Apple CarPlay.
3. Select on or off.

Android Auto (If available)


1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Android Auto.
3. Select on or off.

Note

Even though you set the Projection feature "Off", connecting the device and pressing the projection feature on home screen will display pop up message as following: "While active, New device will be displayed on this screen".

158 Infotainment System


USB Auto Launch

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch USB Auto Launch.
3. Select on or off.

- On: If you connect the device through USB port, it will be launched automatically.
- Off: If you connect the device through USB port, it will not be launched automatically.


Rear Camera (If equipped)

The Rear Camera menu is available in vehicles which has Rear Vision Camera (RVC) option. (Vehicles produced with Rear Vision Camera).

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Rear Camera.
 - Guidance Lines: Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off.

- Rear Park Assist Symbols: Select the Rear Park Assist Symbols feature to turn on or off.


Return to Factory Settings


1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Return to Factory Settings.
 - Restore Vehicle Settings: Restore all vehicle settings.
 - Clear All Private Data: Clear all private data from the system.
 - Restore Radio Settings: Restore all radio settings.

Radio


AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

 : Press to go to the Home Page.

 : Press to turn on, mute, or unmute the system. Press and hold to turn off the system.

Selecting a Band



1. Press .
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Select AM, FM, USB, Bluetooth or AUX input.

The last station that was playing starts playing again.

Selecting a Station

Seek Tuning

If the radio station is not known:

Press  or  to automatically search for available radio stations.

Direct Tune

From the AM or FM menu:

1. Touch Tune.
2. Enter the station number.
3. Touch Go.

Favorite

1. Touch < or > to scroll through the favorite pages.
2. Touch the station to select it.

Station List

1. From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu.
2. Select Station List.
3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

Update Station List

- From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu, then touch Update Station List. The broadcasting list updating will begin.

- During the AM or FM broadcasting list update, touch Cancel to stop the updates.

RDS

Setting the RDS function in the FM radio RDS supported.

- From the FM menu, turn on or off the RDS.

Menu

Touch to choose between available menus for the current source.

Storing a Station as a Favorite

Stations from all bands can be stored in any order in the favorite pages.

Up to 25 stations can be stored.

Storing Stations

To store the station to a position in the list, touch the corresponding button 1–5 until a beep is heard.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Touch < or > to select the desired page of saved favorites.

3. Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favorites page.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically reduces interference, some static can occur,

160 Infotainment System

especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

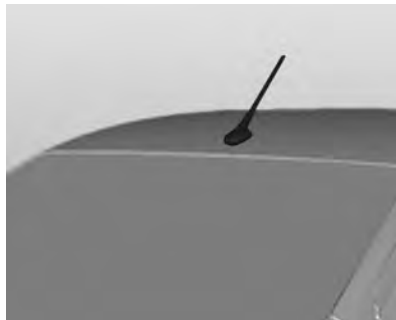
AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Cell Phone Usage

Cell phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Fixed Mast Antenna



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it counterclockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

Caution

To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

Audio Players

USB Port

Using the USB Port

The infotainment system can play music or movies by connecting a device to the USB port.

USB Support

The vehicle may have a USB port on the main storage under the armrest, and uses the USB 2.0 standard.

Not all iPods and USB drives are compatible with the USB port.

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple® for proper operation. iPod firmware can be updated using the latest iTunes® application. See www.apple.com/br/itunes.

For help with identifying your iPod, go to www.apple.com/br/support.

The USB port can play both lower and upper case .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav files stored on a USB storage device.

USB Supported Folder Structure

The infotainment system supports up to 15 stages of folder structure.

Connecting a USB Storage Device or iPod/iPhone

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the USB port.

To connect an iPod/iPhone, connect one end of the device's cable to the iPod/iPhone and the other end to the USB port.

The iPod/iPhone charges while it is connected to the vehicle if the ignition is in position 1 or 2. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 216. When the vehicle is turned off, the iPod/iPhone automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

For more information on USB usage, see "Audio System Information" under later in this section.

USB Port (Audio System)

The infotainment system can play the music files contained in the USB storage device or iPod/iPhone products.

Audio System Information

Using MP3/WMA/OGG/WAV Files

- Music files with .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav file name extensions can be played.
- MP3 files that can be played: Bit rate: 8 kbps to 320 kbps. Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, and 16 kHz.
- Files with a bit rate above 128 kbps will result in higher quality sound.
- ID3 Tag information for MP3 files, such as the album name and the artist, can be displayed.
- To display album title, track title, and artist information, the file should be compatible with the ID3 Tag V1 and V2 formats.

162 Infotainment System

Using USB Storage Devices and iPod/iPhone

- Use a USB or flash memory type storage device. Do not connect using a USB adaptor.
- Do not connect and reconnect the USB device repeatedly in a short time, as this may cause static electricity and problems using the device.
- Use a USB device with a metal connecting terminal.
- Connection with i-Stick Type USB storage devices may be faulty due to vehicle vibration.
- Do not touch the USB connecting terminal.
- The time it takes to process files will depend on the USB storage device type and capacity, and the type of files stored.
- Some USB storage device files may not be compatible.
- Up to two USB devices and one iPod can be played through a USB hub. All devices may not be supported, depending on the performance of the USB hub. If there is not enough power supply, it may not operate normally.
- Do not disconnect the USB storage device while it is playing. This may cause damage to the product or affect the performance of the USB device.
- Disconnect the USB storage device when the ignition is turned off. If the ignition is turned on while the USB device is connected, the USB device may be damaged or may not operate normally.
- USB storage devices can only be connected for playing music/ movies and viewing photo files.
- Do not use the USB terminal to charge USB accessory equipment. The heat generated may cause performance issues or damage.
- Music files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied cannot be played.
- Some iPod/iPhone product models may not support the connectivity or functionality of this product.
- Only connect the iPod/iPhone with connection cables supported by iPod/iPhone products. Other connection cables cannot be used.
- The iPod/iPhone may be damaged if it is connected to the vehicle with the ignition on. When not in use, disconnect the iPod/iPhone.
- When the iPod/iPhone is connected to the USB port by using the iPod/iPhone cable, the Bluetooth music is not supported.
- The iPod/iPhone playback functions and the information displayed may be different when played on the infotainment system.

	Step 1	Step 2	Step 3	Step 4
Playlist	Playlist	Songs		
Artists	Artists	Albums	Songs	
Albums	Albums	Songs		
Songs	Songs			
Genres	Genres	Artists	Albums	Songs
Composer	Composer	Albums	Songs	
Audiobooks	Tracks			

- Refer to the table for the classification items related to the search function provided by the iPod/iPhone.


USB Player

Playing Music from a USB Device

- Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.





If the USB device is already connected:

- Press .
- Touch AUDIO.
- Touch Source.
- Touch USB.



To stop the USB device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the USB device, select another function, then remove the USB device.


Pause

- Touch  to pause.
- Touch  to resume.



Changing to Next/Previous Files

- Touch  to change to the next file.
- Touch  within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch  after five seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forward or Backward

Touch and hold  or  during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing a File Randomly

Touch  during playback.

- ON: Plays all files randomly.
- OFF: Returns to normal playback.

Using the USB Music Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the desired menu.

164 Infotainment System

Browse Music

1. Touch Browse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

- Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See “Tone Settings” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ 155.

Auto Volume

- Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See “Auto Volume” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ 155.

MTP (Media Transfer Protocol)

- Connect a MTP supported device.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the MTP device.
- If a non-readable MTP device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.


iPod/iPhone Player

This feature is limited to models supporting the iPod/iPhone connection.

Playing Music Files

- Connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB port.
- Play will start from the previously played point after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.



If the iPod/iPhone is already connected:

1. Press .
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch iPod.



To stop the device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the device, select another function, then remove the device.


Pause

- Touch  to pause.
- Touch  to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Song



- Touch  to change to the next song.
- Touch  within three seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch  after three seconds of the playback time.

Infotainment System 165

Scanning Forward or Backward

Touch and hold  or  during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing a File Randomly

Touch  during playback.

- ON: Plays all files randomly.
- OFF: Returns to normal playback.

Using the iPod Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the appropriate play mode.

Browse Music

1. Touch Browse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

- Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See “Tone Settings” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ 155.

Auto Volume

- Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See “Auto Volume” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ 155.

USB Port (Picture System)

The infotainment system can view picture files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

Picture System Information

- Supported file extensions: .jpg, .bmp, .png, .gif.
- Animated GIF files are not supported.
- Some files may not operate due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

Viewing Pictures

1. Connect the USB device to the USB port.

2. Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.


If the compatible USB device is already connected:

1. Press .
2. Touch GALLERY.
3. Touch .



Caution

Some features are disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

Viewing a Slide Show

1. Touch  from the picture screen.
2. Touch the screen to cancel the slide show during the slide show playback.

Viewing a Previous or Next Picture

Touch  or  from the picture screen.

166 Infotainment System


Rotating a Picture

Touch  from the picture screen.

Enlarging a Picture

Touch  from the picture screen.

Using the USB Picture Menu

1. Touch MENU from the picture screen.
2. Touch the appropriate menu:
 - Slide Show Time: Allows selection of the slide show interval.
 - Clock, Temp. Display: Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.
 - Display Settings: Adjusts for Brightness and Contrast.
3. Touch  to exit.

USB Port (Movie System)

The infotainment system can play movie files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

Movie System Information

- Available resolution: Lower than 1280 x 720 (W x H) pixels.
- Frame rate: Less than 30 fps.
- Playable movie file: mp4. The playable movie file may not be played according to the codec format.
- Playable codec format: H.264 codec.
- Playable Audio format: MP3, AC3, AAC, WMA.
- Max video bitrate:
 - mpeg-1: 8 Mbps
 - mpeg-4 (mpg4, mp42, mp43): 4 Mbps
- Max audio bitrate:
 - mp3: 320 Kbps
 - wma: 320 Kbps

- ac-3: 640 Kbps

- aac: 449 Kbps

- Movie files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied may not be played.

Playing a Movie File



1. Connect the USB device to the USB port.
2. Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.

If the USB device is already connected:



1. Press .
2. Touch GALLERY.
3. Touch .

Movie is not available while driving.


Pause

- Touch  to pause.
- Touch  to resume.



Changing to Next/Previous Movie

- Touch  to change to the next file.
- Touch  within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.



Returning to the Beginning of the Current Movie

Touch  after five seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forward or Backward

Touch and hold  or  during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Viewing Full Screen

Touch  from the movie screen. Touch  again to return to the previous screen.

Using the USB Movie Menu

1. Touch MENU from the movie screen.

2. Touch the appropriate menu:

- Tone Settings: shows the sound setup. See “Tone Settings” in *Operation* ⇨ 155.
- Auto Volume: Automatically adjusts the volume according to the speed of the vehicle. See “Auto Volume” in *Operation* ⇨ 155.
- Clock Temp. Display: Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.
- Display Settings: Adjusts for brightness and contrast.

3. Touch  to exit.

Auxiliary Devices

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack (if equipped)



Settings menus and functions may vary depending on vehicle options.

If equipped, the auxiliary input jack can be used to connect external audio devices such as an iPod®, iPhone®, MP3 player, CD player, and other supported devices for use as another source for audio listening. This input jack is not an audio output; do not plug headphones into the front auxiliary input jack.

If equipped with auxiliary input jack the infotainment system can play music connected by the auxiliary device.

Playing Music

To play music from the device, if the device is already connected:

1. Press .
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch AUX.
5. Touch .

168 Infotainment System

To adjust the tone settings, see “Preset Tone Settings” and “Custom Tone Settings” under “System Settings” in *Operation* ⇨ 155.

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)

If equipped with Bluetooth[®] capability, the system can interact with many Bluetooth phones, PDAs, or other devices to:

- Place and receive hands-free calls.
- Transmit hands-free data.
- Play audio streaming files.

The device must be paired first. See “Pairing” later in this section.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

- Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all cell phones. See “Pairing” later in this section.

Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth[®] is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system is used to control the system. The system can be used while in ignition position 1 or 2. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 216. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.

Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, the device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.

Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

To use infotainment controls to access the menu system, see *Overview* ⇨ 99.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone.

Pairing Information



- A Bluetooth phone with MP3 capability cannot be paired to the vehicle as a phone and an MP3 player via USB port at the same time.
- Up to 10 cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.

- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were first paired.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. This is dependent on the type of phone paired. If the automatic download does not occur, proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Pairing a Phone – SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and Simple Secure Pairing (SSP) is supported:


1. Press .
2. Touch PHONE or press  on the steering wheel.
3. Touch Search Device.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.






170 Infotainment System

5. Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
6. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing a Phone – SSP and Paired Device

When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is supported:


1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.

5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
 6. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
 7. Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
- The connected phone is highlighted by .
 -  /  indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.
 -  indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
 -  indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Pairing a Phone – No SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

1. Press .


2. Touch PHONE or press  on the steering wheel.
3. Touch Search Device.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
5. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.





If a Bluetooth device was previously connected, the infotainment system executes the auto connection. However, if the Bluetooth setting on the Bluetooth device is turned off, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing a Phone – No SSP and Paired Device


When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
6. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
7. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device. When the


Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen.

-  /  indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.
-  indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
-  indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Connecting a Paired Bluetooth Device


1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to be connected.

Checking the Bluetooth Connection



1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.

3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. The paired device will show highlighted.

Disconnecting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the name of the device to be disconnected.
5. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to delete.
5. Touch .
6. Touch Delete.


172 Infotainment System

Note

If the device to be deleted is connected, the disconnecting procedure needs to be performed previously to the deleting procedure.

Bluetooth Music

Before playing Bluetooth music, read the following information:

- A cell phone or Bluetooth device that supports Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) versions over 1.2 must be registered and connected to the vehicle.
- From the cell phone or Bluetooth device, find the Bluetooth device type to set/connect the item as a stereo headset.
-  will appear on the screen if the stereo headset is successfully connected.
- The sound played by the Bluetooth device is delivered through the infotainment system.

- Bluetooth music can be played only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth phone to the infotainment system.
- If the Bluetooth device is disconnected while playing phone music, the music is discontinued. The audio streaming function may not be supported in some Bluetooth phones. Only one function can be used at a time between the Bluetooth hands-free or Phone music function. For example, if you convert to Bluetooth hands-free while playing Phone music, the music is discontinued. Playing music from the car is not possible when there are no music files stored in the cell phone.


Note

Verify the volume of your phone and its music player. If it is too low, you might not be able to hear the Bluetooth music.

Note


Depending on the phone device and/or player used, the music name might not be displayed while playing the music.

Playing Bluetooth Music

1. Press .
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch Bluetooth.

Pause


Touch  to pause.

Touch  to resume.


Playing the Next Song

Touch .



Playing the Previous Song

Touch  within approximately two seconds of playback time to play the previous song.


Returning to the Beginning of the Current Song

Touch  after approximately two seconds of playback time.

Search

Touch and hold  or  to rewind or fast forward.

Playing Music Randomly

Touch  during playback. Touch again to return to normal play.

This function may not be supported depending on the Bluetooth device.

Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.

Conditions that may occur when playing Bluetooth music:

- It takes time to transmit data from the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- If the cell phone or Bluetooth device is not in the waiting screen mode, it may not automatically play.

- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the Bluetooth device in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the Bluetooth device options, this order to play/stop may take time to activate.
- If the Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, then check to see if the Bluetooth device is in the waiting screen mode.
- Sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.
- The infotainment system outputs the audio from the cell phone or Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.

Hands-Free Phone

General Information

Vehicles with a Hands-Free Phone system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a hands-free profile to make and receive phone calls.

The infotainment system and voice control are used to operate the system. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Hands-Free Phone system.

Hands-Free Phone Controls


Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Hands-Free Phone system.

Steering Wheel Controls (if equipped)

Steering wheel controls can be used to:



- Answer incoming calls.
- Confirm system information.
- End a call.
- Decline a call.
- Cancel an operation.
- Make outgoing calls using the call list.



 : Press to answer incoming calls.

 : Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation.

174 Infotainment System



Making a Call by Entering a Phone Number

- Press , then touch PHONE on the screen.
- Press  on the steering wheel.


If a wrong number is entered, touch  to delete the number one digit at a time, or touch and hold  to delete all digits of the number.

Switching a Call to the Cell Phone (Private Mode)

To switch the call from the cell phone to hands-free:



1. Touch .
2. Touch  again to switch back to hands-free.

Turning the Microphone On and Off

Touch  to turn the microphone on or off.

Calling by Redial



To call by using redial:



- Press  on the steering wheel controls to display the redial guidance screen.
- Touch  on the phone screen.

Redialing is not possible when there is no call history.



Taking Calls

When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth cell phone, the audio system will be muted or paused and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.

Press  on the steering wheel controls or touch  on the screen.

To decline the call, press  on the steering wheel controls or touch  on the screen.

Using the Contacts Menu

1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.
2. Touch  or  to scroll through the list.
3. Touch the phone book entry to call.

4. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.


Note

When the Bluetooth of your cell phone and the radio are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. But the phone book may not be downloaded automatically according to the type of the phone. In this case, use the phone book on your phone. We recommend that you “Always” accept the Phone book connection request on the initial pairing of the phone.

If there is a connected Bluetooth device previously, the Infotainment system executes the auto connection. But if the Bluetooth setting on your device is turned off, failure message is displayed on the Infotainment system.

Searching for Contacts Entries

1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.

2. Touch  on the contacts screen.
3. Use the keypad to input the name to search. For details, see "Searching for a Name" following.
4. Touch the phone book entry to call.
5. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book will download. Some phones may not download automatically. If this happens, connect it again or proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Searching for a Name





Select characters by using the keypad on the phone book screen. As characters are selected, the names that include those characters will display on the phone book

screen. As more characters of the name are entered, the list of possible names is shortened.

To search for the name Alex:

1. Touch (abc) to select the first character.
2. Touch (jkl) to select the second character.
3. Touch (def) to select the third character.
4. Touch (wxy) to select the fourth character.

Making a Call from Call History

1. Touch Call History on the phone screen.
2. Touch one of the following for:
 -  All calls history.
 -  Dialed calls.
 -  Missed calls.
 -  Received calls.
3. Select the contact entry to call.

Making a Call with Speed Dial Numbers

Touch and hold the speed dial number using the keypad on the phone screen.

Only speed dial numbers already stored on the cell phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to two-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For two-digit speed dial numbers, press and hold the second digit to make a call to the speed dial number.

Hands-Free Phone (Apple CarPlay and Android Auto)

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

For more information see *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ 138

176 Infotainment System

Trademarks and License Agreements



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



DivX Certified® to play DivX® video, including premium content.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.



“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPod and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Introduction

General

The Infotainment system provides Infotainment in your car, using the latest technology.

The radio can be easily used by registering up to 24 AM-FM radio stations with the – buttons 1 ~ 4 per every six pages.

The USB player can play connected USB storage devices or iPod/iPhone products.

The function of the Bluetooth phone connection allows for the use of wireless hands-free phone calls, as well as a phone music player.

Connect a portable music player to the exterior sound input and enjoy the rich sound of the Infotainment system.

The digital sound processor provides a number of preset equalizer modes for sound optimization.

Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Specifications

- Maximum output power : 20 W per channel (4 channels)
- Speaker impedance : 4 ohms

The system can be easily adjusted with the carefully designed adjusting device, smart displayer, and multifunctional menu dial regulator.

- The "**Overview**" section provides a simple overview of the Infotainment system functions and a summary of all regulatory devices.
- The "**Operation**" section explains the basic controls for the Infotainment system.

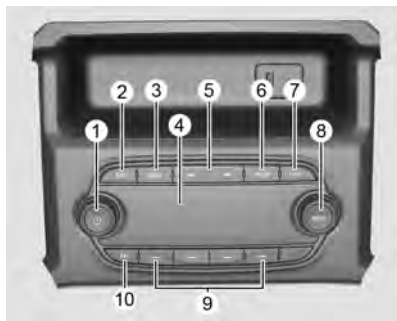
178 Infotainment System

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The Infotainment system is equipped with an electronic security system for the purpose of theft deterrence.

The Infotainment system therefore functions only in your vehicle and is worthless to a thief.

Overview



1.

- When power is off, press to turn power on.

- When power is on, press and hold to turn power off.
- When power is on, press shortly to turn the mute function on or off.
- Turn to control volume.

2. **RADIO**

Select Radio mode. Each time **RADIO** is pressed, the system switches between AM RADIO → FM RADIO.

3. **MEDIA**

Change the mode in the order of USB/iPod → Bluetooth music.

4. **DISPLAY**

Display for Play, Reception, Menu state and information.

5. **◀▶ / ⏮⏭ (seek)**

- In Radio mode:
When pressed shortly, automatically seeks station with superior reception.

When pressed and held, continuously changes the station until ◀◀ or ▶▶ is released. When releasing, the system stops on the current frequency displayed or seeks the next station.

- In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio playback:

When pressed shortly, move to the previous or next file.

When pressed and held, rewind or fast forward the file.

6. **PHONE**

Enter the phone application mode.

7. **BACK**

Cancel input content or return to the previous menu.

8. **MENU**

- Turn to search the station/ file on the list screen or move/change setup content or setup values.

- Press to display the currently functioning menu or select/practice setup content and setup values.
9. – **BUTTONS**
- In Radio mode:
When pressed shortly, recall the stored radio station.
When pressed and held, store the current radio station to the Favorites page.
 - In Menu mode:
Press to select the function linked to –.
10. **FAV** (favorites)
Select the page of saved favorite channels.


Operation

Buttons and controlling device

The Infotainment system is operated by using the function buttons, multifunctional dial, and the menu indicated on the screen display.

System on/off

Press  to turn the power on.

When the power is off, pressing  will turn the power on and play a radio broadcast.

Press and hold  to turn the power off.



When the System is turned off, the time of Day is displayed.


Volume control




Turn  to control the volume.

- Available volume range : 0~ 63.
- When the volume is turned down to zero, this is not equivalent to mute mode.
- Turning on the Infotainment system power will set the volume level to its previous selection (when it is less than the maximum starting volume).

180 Infotainment System

Mute control

Press  to turn mute on.

- Mute symbol “” will display in the status field and mute the sound.
- Press  again or turn  to restore sound.
- In USB mode, when the system is set to mute, playback is paused.

Tone settings

Press **MENU** > select Settings > select Tone Settings to enter the Tone Settings screen.

- Turn **MENU** to select the Tone Settings mode. Use **MENU** to switch between Bass ↔ Midrange ↔ Treble ↔ Balance ↔ EQ.
- Highlight the desired tone setting option and press **MENU** to be able to change its current value.

- Turning **MENU** will change the tone setting value and the changes will be reflected in the bar graphic on the display.

Press **MENU** to store the new setting and return to the Tone Settings screen.

Tone setting menu

- **Bass** : Sets the bass sound level.
- **Midrange** : Sets the middle sound level.
- **Treble** : Sets the treble sound level.
- **Balance** : Sets the sound balance between the right and left speaker.
- **EQ** : Sets one of the 7 EQ styles (Custom, Pop, Rock, Country, Jazz, Talk, Classical).
- The tone settings values range between -12 and +12.

Select function

AM-FM radio

Press **RADIO** to select the AM or FM.

Press **MENU** to open the AM or FM menu that includes options for selecting broadcast stations.

USB/iPod/Bluetooth music

Press **MEDIA** to select the audio player functions.

Each time **MEDIA** is pressed, the system switches between USB/iPod → Bluetooth music.

Press **MENU** to open the menu with options for the relevant function or the menu of the relevant device.

Bluetooth hands-free phone device

Press **PHONE** to enter the Bluetooth hands-free phone function.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Listening to radio station

Selecting the radio mode



Press **RADIO** repeatedly to switch between AM RADIO → FM RADIO.

- The previously chosen broadcasting station will be received.
- When changing Radio mode/ band by pressing **RADIO**, the system displays radio intro view firstly.

- The playing screen contains the data elements related to the broadcast audio source.

Station search

Press **◀▶** / **▶▶** to automatically search for radio station with superior reception.

Pressing and holding **◀▶** / **▶▶** continuously changes the station until the button is released. After the release, the system seeks for the next station.

Tuning a radio station manually

Turn **MENU** to manually find the desired broadcasting frequency.

Storing favorites

Repeatedly press **FAV** to select the desired page of stored favorites.

Press and hold any of the **–** buttons to store the current radio station to that button of the selected Favorites page.

- Up to 6 Favorites pages can be stored, and each page can store up to four radio stations.

- It is possible to setup the number of the Favorites pages being used in Menu → Set Number of Favorite Pages.
- If a new radio station is stored to a **–** previously stored, its previous content will be deleted and replaced with the new radio station that is stored.
- The maximum number of Favorites that a user can store is 24.

Selecting presets

Repeatedly press **FAV** to select the desired FAV preset page.

- The number 1 broadcasting information of the selected FAV preset page will be displayed.

Press a **–** to directly listen to the radio station stored to that button.

Waveband menus

While listening to the radio, press **MENU** to enter the AM or FM list.

182 Infotainment System

Turn **MENU** to move to the desired menu item, and then press **MENU** to select the relevant item or to enter the item's detailed menu.

AM-FM menu

- **Station list** : Selects a station in the list of stations with good reception.
- **Update station list** : Automatically searches and saves receivable frequencies to the Station List.
- **Categories**: Select a category and then select a station from the list.
- **Set number of favorites page** : Set the number of Favorites pages.
- **Settings**: Adjust the settings of the radio.

Audio Players

Auxiliary Devices

USB player

Cautions for using USB devices

- Operation cannot be guaranteed if the HDD built-in USB mass storage device or CF or SD memory card is connected by using a USB adaptor. Use a USB or flash memory type storage device.
- Take caution to avoid static electricity discharge when connecting or disconnecting the USB. If connection and disconnection are repeated many times in a short time, this may cause a problem in using the device.
- Operation is not guaranteed if the connecting terminal of the USB device is not metal.

- Connection with i-Stick Type USB storage devices may be faulty due to vehicle vibration, so their operation cannot be guaranteed.
- Be careful not to touch the USB connecting terminal with an object or any part of your body.
- The USB storage device can only be recognized when it is formatted in FAT16/32 file format. Only devices with an allocated unit size of 512 byte/sector or 2,048 byte/sector can be used. NTFS and other file systems cannot be recognized.
- According to the type and capacity of the USB storage device and the type of the stored file, the time it takes to recognize the files may differ. This is not a problem with the product in this case, so please wait for the files to be processed.
- Files in some USB storage devices may not be recognized due to compatibility problems, and connections with a memory

reader or a USB hub are not supported. Please check the device's operation in the vehicle before use.

- When devices such as an MP3 player or digital camera are connected through a mobile disc, it may not operate normally.
- Do not disconnect the USB storage device while it is being played.

This may cause damage to the product or the performance of the USB device.

- Disconnect the connected USB storage device when the vehicle ignition is turned off. If the ignition is turned on while the USB storage device is connected, the USB storage device may be damaged or may not operate normally in some cases.

Caution

USB storage devices can only be connected to this product for the purpose of playing music files.

The product's USB terminal should not be used to charge USB accessory equipment since the heat generation using the USB terminal may cause performance issues or damage to the product.

- When the logical drive is separated from a mass USB storage device, only the files from the top-level logical drive can be played as USB music files. This is the reason that the music files to be played should be stored in the top-level drive of the device. Music files on particular USB storage devices may also not be normally played if an application is loaded by partitioning a separate drive inside the USB device.

Caution for using USB music files

- Damaged music files may be cut-off during playback or may not be played at all.

About MP3 (WMA) music files

- The MP3 files that can be played are the following:
 - Bit rate : 8 kbps ~ 320 kbps
 - Sampling frequency:
 - 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
 - 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
- This product displays MP3 (WMA) files with the mp3, .wma (lower case letters) or .MP3 or .WMA (capital letters) file name extensions.
- This product can display ID3 tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4) information about album, artist, etc. for MP3 files.
- This product can play MP3 files which use VBR. When a VBR type MP3 file is being played,

184 Infotainment System

the remaining time displayed may be different from the actual time remaining.

Connecting the USB storage device

Connect the USB storage device in which music files are stored to the USB connection terminal.

Once the product finishes reading the information on the USB storage device, it will automatically start playing.

If a non-readable USB storage device is connected, an error message will appear and the product will automatically switch to the previously used function or the FM radio function.

If the USB storage device to be played is already connected, repeatedly press **MEDIA** to select the USB player.

- It will automatically play from the previous playing point.

- If there is no device connected, **"No Media Available"** will be displayed with a DISMISS and PAIR option on the display screen.
- The information displayed includes the file name, folder name, and ID3 Tag information saved with the song.

If incorrect ID3 Tag information (e.g. artist, song title) was added to MP3 (WMA) files before they were saved to the mass storage device, this information will be displayed as is by the Infotainment system.

Incorrect ID3 Tag information cannot be modified or corrected on the Infotainment system.

The information for songs expressed in special symbols or in unavailable languages may be displayed as "*****" or are not displayed at all.

Ending USB music files playback

Press **RADIO** or **MEDIA** to select other functions.

Selecting playing file

While playing, press **◀◀ / ▶▶** to select the previous or next file.

Turn **MENU** to move the desired file in the file list, and then press **MENU** to instantly change it.

Fast-forwarding and re-winding the file

While playing, press and hold **◀◀ / ▶▶** to rewind or fast-forward through the song until released.

Once released, the file will begin playing at normal speed.

Using the USB menu

While playing the file, press **MENU** to enter the USB Menu.

Turn **MENU** to move to the desired menu item, and then press **MENU** to select the relevant item or to enter the item's detailed menu.

- **Folder View** : Enter the Folder View mode, and move to the previous or next folder.
- **Shuffle** : Press **MENU** to turn the shuffle feature on or off.

Browsing/indexing device

- Browsing is not supported until indexing is completed for the connected device.
- When a single device with greater than 6,000 songs is connected, a pop-up “**Media indexing memory full Use folder view or remove other device**” will display.

Remove USB

Remove the USB device from the USB connection terminal.

If the USB device is removed, the system will display the No Connection message for each source on the display screen and keep the current status until the device is reconnected.

Using the Media transfer protocol (MTP) menu

Charge Only : Select the charge option for the MTP device. The MTP device will be charged, and the system will show the pop-up message, when it is connected.

- The default setting is Charge Only.
- When the Charge Only option is selected in the Media Transfer Protocol (MTP) Setting Menu, the audio source is not changed and the connected device is only charged.
- If you change to USB mode while charging the device, a Charge message with charging activity indicator is shown on the display screen. In this case, the system will not index the files on the device.
- Charging may not be supported by some MTP devices.

Scan Music Folder Only : Select the Music Folder Scan option for the MTP device.

The system can display the Artist Name/Song Name/Elapsed Time regarding the current song and access the playlist on the MTP device.

Scan All Folder : Select the All Folder scan option for the MTP device.

- The device indexing time takes longer than the setting of Scan Music Folder Only. It depends on the smartphone and the files/folders on the smartphone.
- With some phones featuring Media Transfer Protocol (MTP), music search can take a long time.
- If the phone screen is locked, you cannot search for music. To access music on the phone, unlock the phone screen.

If you connect the abnormal device, the system may not properly operate.

iPod player

Connecting iPod player

Connect the iPod device in which the music files are stored to the USB connection terminal.

Some iPod/iPhone product models may not be supported.

186 Infotainment System

If you connect the abnormal device, the system may not properly operate.

Only connect the iPod to this product with connection cables supported by iPod products. Other connection cables cannot be used.

- In some cases, the iPod product may be damaged, if the ignition is turned off when it is connected to the product.

When the iPod product is not being used, keep it separately from this product with the car ignition turned off.

- Once the product finishes reading the information on the iPod device, it will play automatically.
- If a non-readable iPod device is connected, then the relevant error message will appear and the product will automatically switch to the previously used function or the FM radio function.

If the iPod device to be played is already connected, repeatedly press **MEDIA** to select the iPod player.

- It will automatically play from the previously played point.
- The playback functions and the information display items of the iPod player used with this product may be different from the iPod in terms of play order, method, and the information displayed.

Afterwards, the functions to play the iPod are operated similarly to USB playback.

Ending iPod playback

To end playback, press **RADIO** or **MEDIA** to select other functions.

Using the iPod menu

While playing the file, press **MENU** to enter the Menu iPod.

Turn **MENU** to move the desired menu item, and then press **MENU** to select the relevant item or to enter the item's detailed menu.

- **Browse "Device Name" :**
Selects a list item in the list of browse names such as Playlists, Artists, Albums, Tracks, Genres, Audio Books, and Composers.
- **Shuffle :** Turn the shuffle feature on or off.

Remove iPod

Remove the iPod from the USB connection terminal.

When the iPod is removed, the system will display the No connection message for each source on the display screen and keep the current status until the device is reconnected.

Personalization

How to use the Settings menu for personalization

Select Settings in the Menu > turn **MENU** to move to the desired menu item > press **MENU** to enter the item's detailed menu.

- Settings menus and functions may differ according to car model.
- The settings menu comprises a detailed list for the relevant setup menu or functioning state.
- If there is another detailed list from the relevant detailed list, you can repeat this action.

Setting the time and date

Set time : Manually set the hours and minutes for the current time.

- Press **MENU** to enter the Set Time in the Time and Date menu.
- Press - to select the Time format 12HR or 24HR.

- Turn **MENU** to change the hour, and then press **MENU** to move to the Minute Setting.
- Turn **MENU** to change the minute, and then press **MENU** to move to the AM or PM Setting.
- Turn **MENU** to select the AM or PM, and then press **MENU** to finish the Time Setting. When **MENU** is pressed, the Time and Date menu is automatically displayed.

Set date : Manually set the current year, month or date.

Press **MENU** to enter the Set Date in the Time and Date menu.

Press - to select the Date format.
The format shows: DD/MM/YYYY :
15. Oct. 2014
MM/DD/YYYY : Oct. 15. 2014
YYYY/MM/DD : 2014. Oct. 15

- Turn **MENU** to change the Month, and then press **MENU** to move to the Day Setting.
- Turn **MENU** to change the Day, and then press **MENU** to move to the Year Setting.

- Turn **MENU** to change the Year, and then press **MENU** to finish the Date Setting. When **MENU** is pressed, the Time and Date menu is automatically displayed.

Setting the tone

- For details, see *Operation* ⇨ 179.

Setting the auto volume

Auto Volume adjusts the volume of the audio based on the speed or ambient noise of the vehicle.

- **Off** : Auto Volume does not act.
- **Low** : A lower range volume curve is used to adjust audio volume with changes in vehicle speed.
- **Medium-Low** : Medium-Low will adjust Auto Volume to approximately the range between low to medium respectively.
- **Medium** : A middle range volume curve is used to adjust the audio volume with changes in vehicle speed.

188 Infotainment System

- **Medium-High** : Medium-High will adjust Auto Volume to approximately the range between medium to high respectively.
- **High** : A more aggressive volume curve is used to adjust the audio volume with changes in vehicle speed.

Setting the maximum startup volume

Manually set maximum limit for the start-up volume.

Setting the language

Turn **MENU** to select the Vehicle Settings in the Settings menu > press **MENU** > turn **MENU** to select Languages > press **MENU** to enter the item's detailed menu.

Select the desired language for displaying.

Return factory settings

Turn **MENU** to select the Vehicle Settings in the Settings menu > press **MENU** > turn **MENU** to select

Return to Factory Settings > press **MENU** to enter the item's detailed menu.

Restore all settings to the default settings.

Software information

Turn **MENU** to select Vehicle Settings in the Settings menu > press **MENU** > turn **MENU** to select Software Information > press **MENU** to enter the item's detailed menu.

Shows the current Software version.

Phone

Bluetooth

About Bluetooth

Before connecting the Bluetooth unit

- Before connecting the head unit with the mobile phone, check to see that the mobile phone supports Bluetooth features.
- Even if the phone supports Bluetooth Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found in a search, if the phone has been set to hidden mode or if the Bluetooth power is turned off.
- Disable the hidden mode or turn on the Bluetooth power prior to searching or connecting with the head unit.
- If Auto Connection is used, the Bluetooth phone automatically connects to the system when the ignition is turned on.

Infotainment System 189

- If you do not want automatic connection with your Bluetooth device, turn the Bluetooth feature off on the Bluetooth device.
 - Park the vehicle when connecting the unit with the mobile phone.
 - Bluetooth connection may be intermittently disconnected depending on the phone. Follow these steps to try again.
 - Turn the Bluetooth® function within the mobile phone OFF/ON and try again.
 - Turn the mobile phone power OFF/ON and try again.
 - Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and try again.
 - Reboot this unit and try again.
 - Delete all paired devices, pair and try again.
 - The hands-free call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.
 - Pairing Bluetooth devices and the use of Bluetooth features are not recommended when the vehicle is in motion. Please park your vehicle first.
 - The process of downloading contacts may differ depending on the mobile phone.

In case of events not described within this manual, see *the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide*.
 - As a Bluetooth wireless connection can have a range of up to 10 meters, your Bluetooth device may automatically connect to the system even if the device is not inside the vehicle. Please consider this, especially when pairing or connecting Bluetooth devices to the Infotainment system when other Bluetooth devices may be within range.
 - This unit uses the latest Digital Noise & Echo suppression system to provide the best sound clarity with little or no distortion, but under some conditions there may still be some echo and noise experienced within the vehicle. It is recommended to keep the car windows closed during hands-free calls for best results.
 - This unit uses the following Bluetooth profiles:
 - Phone Book Access Profile (PBAP)
 - Hands Free Profile (HFP)
 - Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP)
 - Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP)
 - If the Bluetooth profiles do not match, the system will display the **"Action not supported by this device"** pop-up on the display screen (e.g. device is not able to control the **MENU** dial).
- If you connect the abnormal device, the system may not properly operate.

190 Infotainment System

Connecting Bluetooth

Registering the Bluetooth device

Register the Bluetooth device to be connected to the Infotainment system.

Firstly, set up the Bluetooth device to be connected from the Bluetooth settings menu to enable other devices to search for the Bluetooth device.

Press **PHONE** to enter the Phone application mode.

To select Pair, press **-**. The information "**Pairing with your vehicle**" appears in the display screen and then the Pairing progress starts.

- If no phone source is connected, the status region displays "**No Device Paired**".
- To change the PIN, press **-** and select New Pin in the Pair menu. Turn and press **MENU** to change the PIN.

From the Bluetooth device, search for this unit and pair the device.

1. Turn on Bluetooth on your phone.
2. Search and select "**Device name**" in the Bluetooth menu.
3. Enter this item on your phone.

To learn more about searching from Bluetooth devices and pairing, refer to the user's manual of your Bluetooth device.

After a while, the Bluetooth device is automatically registered.

- If the registration of the device to be connected to the system is successful, "**Bluetooth Connected**" appears in the display screen.
- After Pairing is completed, a contacts download request is sent to your mobile phone. Please check your phone and accept the download request if necessary.

When pairing a second device, repeat the above steps.

- If a Bluetooth device is connected, a new device cannot be paired. If you want to pair a new phone, first disconnect the connected Bluetooth device.
- This unit can pair up to 5 Bluetooth devices (not connected at the same time).

Adding/Connecting/ Disconnecting/Deleting the Bluetooth devices

Firstly, set up the Bluetooth device to be connected from the Bluetooth setup menu to enable other devices to search for the Bluetooth device.

Press **PHONE** > press **MENU** to select the Bluetooth Devices to enter the Phone List menu > turn **MENU** to move to a device list item > press **MENU** to select the desired menu item.

- **Select Add** : The information "**Pairing with your vehicle**" appears in the display screen and then the Pairing progress starts.

- **Select Connect** : After a while, the Bluetooth device is automatically connected, and "**Bluetooth Connected**" appears on the display screen.
- **Select Disconnect** : Disconnect the connected Bluetooth device from the Phone List menu.
- **Select Delete** : Delete the registered Bluetooth device from the Phone List menu.

Bluetooth music player

Connecting Bluetooth music player

Connect the Bluetooth device on which the music files are stored.

Repeatedly press **MEDIA** to select the Bluetooth Music mode.

- Audio file within the Bluetooth device will automatically play once "**Bluetooth Music**" is displayed on the display screen.
- If music is not yet playing from your mobile device after switching to streaming audio (Bluetooth Music) mode or after

pressing Play on the mobile device itself, try to start music playback by pressing the Play button again.

While playing, press ◀◀ / ▶▶ to move to the previous or next track.

- If the Bluetooth device is disconnected while Bluetooth music is playing, the music will also stop.

Afterwards, the functions to play Bluetooth Music are operated similarly to USB playback.

Using the Bluetooth music menu

While playing, press **MENU** to enter the Bluetooth Audio Menu. Turn **MENU** to move to the desired menu item, and then press **MENU** to select the relevant item or to enter the item's detailed menu.

- **Browse "Device Name"** : Select a list item in the list of browse names. If the Bluetooth profiles do not match, the system will display "**Action not supported by devices**".

- **Shuffle** : Turn the shuffle feature on or off.
- **Manage Bluetooth devices** : Enter the Phone List menu.

Operation

Incoming call

When a phone call comes in on the connected Bluetooth mobile phone, the playing track will be cut off and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.

To receive a call, press – to select Answer to move to the Active Call screen.

To reject a call, press – to select Ignore.

Call waiting


If another person calls while you are already on the phone, the system displays a second incoming call pop-up.

Press **PHONE** to switch between 1st call and 2nd call.

192 Infotainment System

If two calls are active (call waiting mode), a call waiting alert is not displayed.

Phone volume control

Turn  to adjust the Phone Volume while in an active phone call (e.g. through volume steps 0 ~ 63).

Caution

It is possible to transfer your ringtone depending on the mobile phone.

Adjust the ringtone volume of the mobile phone if the volume is too low.

You can use the volume control to adjust the Ring Tone Volume while the ring tone is given out starting at a defined minimum volume. The volume ranges from level 3 to max.

During a call

During the active call, the Active Call screen displays information relevant for the active phone call.

End : End an active phone call.

When a call is ended, the system returns to the screen active before the call.

Mute/Unmute : Mute the vehicle microphone while in an active call by pressing the button.

If the microphone is muted, the label changes Unmute. Press the button again to unmute the microphone.

Handset/hands-free : Switch from hands-free mode to the phone handset mode by pressing – directly.

- If the phone call on the active phone source is handled in handset mode, the label changes to hands-free.
- Pressing the button now returns the phone conversation to hands-free mode.
- The hands-free mode is default when a call is initiated.
- If there is an issue and the call is not transferred to hands-free or handset as the user requested,

a message is displayed notifying the user that the transfer could not be carried out. Please retry.

Keypad : Enter the Keypad screen.

Ending a call

If a call is ended while the system is displaying any other screen than the Active Call screen, the Call Ended message is displayed.

- The call may be ended by the person on the other end of the line or from the Bluetooth handheld device.
- After 5 seconds, the display returns to the previous screen.

Re-dialing a call

If the phone call was dropped, you can re-dial the number before the time out by pressing – directly below the display labeled Redial.

Calling a number in the call log

Press **PHONE** to enter the Phone List menu > turn **MENU** to select the Recent Calls > press **MENU** > turn

MENU to select Missed Calls, Received Calls or Sent Calls, then press **MENU**.

The recent calls list displays an intermediate menu containing missed calls, received calls, and sent calls.

Turn **MENU** to select a name or phone number, and press **MENU** to make a call.

Calling a number in the phone book

Press **PHONE** to enter the Phone List menu > turn **MENU** to select Contacts > press **MENU** > turn **MENU** to select a name or phone number, and press **MENU** to make a call.

The last outgoing phone source is retained at the next ignition cycle, if that phone device is connected, and it is the outgoing phone source.

Downloading the phone book

If the Bluetooth device supports a phone book synchronization function, the phonebook is downloaded automatically after the connection has been established.

- The call history lists can be downloaded from the connected Bluetooth device.
- Sorting call histories by time is not supported.
- It is possible to download the call history even when proceeding another action.
- It is not possible to start the download process when the call history download feature is turned off within the Bluetooth device.
- After Pairing is completed, a contacts download request is sent to your mobile phone. Some phones require additional confirmation. Please check your phone and accept the download request if necessary.

- If a paired phone is deleted, its call history lists will also be deleted from the system.
- The system only uses information coded in UTF-8 format.

Dial a number by keypad

Press **PHONE** to enter the Phone List menu > turn **MENU** to select the Keypad and press **MENU** to enter the Keypad screen.

- When users select Keypad from the Phone Home Screen, a phone dialer keypad is displayed.

Turn **MENU** to highlight the desired digit to dial and press **MENU** to select it.

You can enter max 24 digits.

- If the user continues to turn **MENU** when the end of the keypad is reached, it jumps to the other side of the keypad.
- Digits are displayed in the digit screen as they are entered.

194 Infotainment System

- The Call is not active until the user has input a digit.
- Once the user has entered the desired phone number, press – to begin calling that number.
- While the connection is established, the system displays the Active Call screen.
- If the user made a mistake while entering a phone number, turn **MENU** to highlight Delete and press **MENU** to delete the last digit entered.

Bluetooth devices view

Press **PHONE** to enter the Phone menu > turn **MENU** to select the Bluetooth Devices > press **MENU** to enter the Phone List menu.

- The list contains the device names of all Bluetooth devices that have been paired with the system.
- If the device name received is blank, Unknown is displayed.

- From the Bluetooth Device List menu, the user may add (pair) a device, delete a device, and connect a device.

Text messages

When a Text Message is received by the connected Bluetooth mobile phone, the playing track will be cut off and the phone will display the relevant information.

- If the sender is registered in the phone book, the first and last name are displayed.
- If the number is not stored in the phone book, the phone number is displayed.
- The Text Message alert is displayed as soon as all information is available.

To display the entire message, press – directly below the display labeled “**View**”. The detail message screen is now displayed.

This feature is not available while vehicle is moving.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems

Climate Control Systems	195
Electronic Climate Control System	197

Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents	200
Fixed Air Vents	200

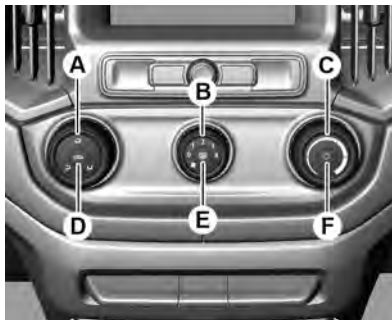
Maintenance

Air Intake	201
Air Conditioning Regular Operation	201

Climate Control Systems




Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.



Controls for:

- Air distribution (A)
- Fan speed (B)

- Temperature (C)
- Air recirculation  (D)
- Heated rear window  (E)
- Cooling  (F)


Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning the knob (C).


Turn the knob (C) clockwise for cooler temperatures.

Air Distribution

Select air outlet by turning the knob (A).

 : To head area via adjustable air vents

 : To head area and foot well


 : To foot well

Fan Speed


Adjust the air flow by turning the knob (B) to the desired speed.

196 Climate Controls

Heated Rear Window

Operated by pressing the  button (E), see *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ 24.

Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the  button (D).

Use recirculation system whenever you need to cool down the air faster and for maximum cooling. Use it also whenever driving on dusty or smelly roads, to avoid particles and odors to penetrate the passenger compartment.

Warning


Driving in recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time can make you sleepy. Periodically turn to the outside air mode for fresh air.

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates and may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.


Cooling


Press button  (F). Cooling is functional only when the engine and fan are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is a little above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel.

The air conditioning will not operate when the fan control knob (B) is in the 0 position.

To turn off the air conditioning system, press the  button (F) again or turn the fan knob (B) to 0.

If the cooling system  (F) is on and you turn the fan knob (B) to 0, the cooling system remains on but inactive, since the fan is on 0. When you turn it back to motion, the air conditioning will work again.


Caution

Use only correct refrigerant.

Warning

It is recommended to service the climate control systems by a Chevrolet Dealership Network or Authorized Repair Shop. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.



Normal Cooling

- Operate the air conditioning system  (F).

- Turn the temperature control knob (C) to the desired area for cooling.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to the desired position.
- Adjust the fan control knob (B) to the desired speed.

Maximum Cooling

Briefly open the windows so that the hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on cooling ☀ (F).
- Press button  (D) to activate air recirculation.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to position .
- Set temperature control knob (C) to the coldest level.
- Set fan speed knob (B) to the highest level.
- Open all the vents.

Indication of Settings

The selected functions are indicated by the LED of the activated button.

Electronic Climate Control System

⚠ Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.





Controls for:

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).

- Air distribution (C).
- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Temperature (E).
- Heated rear window (G).
- Air recirculation (H).

AUTO : Automatic mode, all settings except temperature are chosen automatically by the system (F).

 /  : System ON/OFF (I).

Temperature

Set temperature to the desired value by turning the knob (E).

Blue : Cold.

Red : Warm.

If the minimum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling.

Heating

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) to the red area for heating.
- Select the air distribution (C) to the desired position.

198 Climate Controls

- Turn the fan control knob (A) to the desired speed.

Maximum Heating

Use the maximum heating mode for quick heating.

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) all the way to the red area for heating.
- Turn the fan control knob (A) to maximum speed.

Air Distribution

Press the respective button for desired adjustment, the setting of air distribution is indicated on the Info-Display.



: To windshield and foot well.



: To foot well.



: To head area via adjustable air vents.




: To head area via adjustable air vents and foot well.


Fan Speed

Adjust the air flow by turning the fan knob (A) to the desired speed.

Demisting and Defrosting the Windows


- Press button  (D).
- Recirculation will switch to fresh air.
- Air distribution and fresh air are set automatically.

The air conditioning will be automatically switched on.

Switch on heated rear window  (G).

See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ 24.

Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the  (H) button. When activated, external air inlet is closed and internal air is recirculated within the cabin.

To speed up the cool down and reach the desired temperature faster, if not in the **AUTO** mode, the air recirculation function is recommended.

Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

Air conditioning

Activate or deactivate with the **A/C** (B) button. The air conditioning is only functional when the engine and Climate Control System are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

Even though the air conditioning is turned on, the vehicle will produce warm air if the temperature knob is set in the red area.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel.

Automatic Mode AUTO


Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO** button, the air conditioning is activated automatically.
- Open all air vents.
- Set preselected temperature turning knob (E).

Proper adjustment of the cabin temperature should start from 22° C and wait until the interior temperature of the cabin begins to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature as needed to get the most comfortable air. If it feels hot or hot air blowing out from the air vent adjust the temperature to be lower accordingly.

All air vents are actuated automatically in automatic mode. The air vents should therefore always be open.

The following functions can be adapted manually, however, the system will no longer function in automatic mode.

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).
- Air distribution (C).
- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Air recirculation (H).
- Power  (I).

The preselected temperature is automatically regulated. In the automatic mode, the fan speed and air distribution automatically regulate the air flow.

The system can be manually adapted by the use of air distribution and fan speed controls.

Each change of settings is indicated in the Info-Display.

Activated functions are also indicated by the LED in the button in some cases.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Do not cover the sensor on the instrument panel for correct operation.

Manual Settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and turning the rotary knobs. Changing a setting can deactivate the automatic mode.

To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO** button (F).

200 Climate Controls

Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents

At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on in order to prevent the evaporator from icing up due to lack of air movement.



Push the adjuster knob up to open and down to close the vent or to adjust the volume of air.



Direct the air flow by tilting and swivelling the adjuster knob.



Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, door windows and in the foot wells.

Maintenance

Air Intake



The air intake in front of the windshield in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

In order to ensure continuous and efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year.

Warning

Climate control systems have to be serviced exclusively by qualified personnel. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.

202 Driving and Operating

Driving and Operating

Driving Information

Driving Environment	203
Driving for Better Fuel Economy	203
Defensive Driving	204
Control of a Vehicle	204
Braking	207
Steering	208
Off-Road Driving	209
Driving on Wet Roads	211
Hill and Mountain Roads	213
If the Vehicle Is Stuck	214

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In	214
Ignition Positions	214
Starting the Engine	216
Overrun Cut-Off	217
Parking	217
Parking over Things That Burn	218

Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust	218
Catalytic Converter	218

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission	219
Transmission Display	219
Selector Lever	219
Manual Mode	220
Electronic Driving Programs	220
Fault	220
Interruption of Power Supply	220

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission	221
---------------------------	-----

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive	222
------------------------	-----

Brakes

Brakes	226
Antilock Brake System (ABS)	226
Parking Brake	226
Brake Assist	227
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	227

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)	227
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	228
Hill Descent Control (HDC) ...	229

Cruise Control

Cruise Control	230
----------------------	-----

Object Detection Systems

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System	232
Parking Assist	234
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) ...	237
Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	239

Fuel

Fuel Additives	241
Fuel for Diesel Engines	241
Biodiesel	242
Filling the Tank	243

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information	245
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips	245
Trailer Towing	248
Towing Equipment	249
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ...	250

Driving Information

Driving Environment



General Motors is continuously concerned with environmental protection and has used environment-friendly materials and recycled materials as much as possible in the design and assembly of products.

The production methods also meet the requirements for environmental protection. The use of harmful materials, such as asbestos and cadmium has been discontinued.

The air conditioning system uses a hydrocarbonate fluorochloride-free refrigerant. The pollutant percent in the exhaust has been reduced.

Environmental Policy of General Motors

“General Motors is engaged in preserving the environment and natural resources through the establishment of goals and targets that enable continuous improvement of its environmental performance, waste reduction, compliance to laws and rules, the prevention of pollution, and good communication with the community.”

Note

- The use of lubricating oil results in its partial damage, which is reflected in the formation of carcinogenic compounds, resins, among others;
- The disposal of used lubricating oil in soil or waterways is prohibited by law and create serious environmental damage;

- The uncontrolled combustion of lubricating oil generates harmful residual gases to the environment;
- Recycling is the proper disposal method for this residue.

Recycling Requirements

When the lubricant needs to be changed, look preferably for a Chevrolet dealer.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Important information about fuel consumption:

- Whenever it is possible, turn off the engine. Even for a short period of time, the fuel consumption will be decreased.
- Avoid accelerating the vehicle too much. Abrupt changes of speed will increase the consumption.

204 Driving and Operating

- Low air pressure in tires will decrease the performance, increase the fuel consumption and result in premature tire wear.
- A low quality fuel will damage the engine and increase the consumption.

Defensive Driving

Driving with a defensive attitude is the best recommendation.

Start by fastening the seat belt.

A defensive attitude when driving results in being ready for unforeseen situations of any kind. Assume that other drivers or pedestrians will lack attention or make a mistake.

Try to foresee what the behavior of the other drivers will be and consider every possible mistake.

The most common accidents involve the rear end of the vehicle. Maintaining safe distance is one more measure to avoid crashes.

For the urban and rural areas, the best method is to drive defensively. The unsuspected reaction of the front vehicle can result in an abrupt turn or stop.

Control of a Vehicle

Never Coast with Engine Not Running

Many systems will not operate in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

Pedals



To ensure there is no interference on the pedal travel course check the correct installation of the floor mats.

The brake and accelerator pedal have different heights for providing easier foot motion, whenever changing the foot position – from the brake to the accelerator pedal and vice versa. The clutch pedal has a longer travel for proving more responsiveness for controlling it.

Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the throttle pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the throttle or brake pedal.

Accelerator Pedal



Sudden accelerations lead to fuel consumption increase. Whenever the engine revolution rises, try to shift into the next gear.

Clutch Pedal



Note

Do not drive resting the foot on the clutch pedal. This habit may result in damages to the clutch system and engine, besides increasing the fuel consumption.

Caution

Do not shift suddenly a low gear when driving on slippery roads. This may cause brake effect on the traction wheels, and cause skidding.

Brake Pedal



When pressing the brake pedal, the brake light is switched on the rear lights and the high-mount brake.

206 Driving and Operating

Warning

- Apply the brake pedal softly and progressively. Avoid abrupt applications, which can cause dangerous skidding, along with excessive tyre wear. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ 76.
- Pay attention to the fault indicator lamps on brake systems.
- Do not drive with the engine switched off, the brake servo will not operate, requiring more foot pressure to actuate the brakes.
- If the engine stops functioning with the vehicle in movement, brake normally, pressing and holding the brake pedal without pumping it, otherwise the vacuum on the brake servo unit will

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- deplete, losing the brake assistance in the brake application. Consequently the brake pedal must be fully pressed with greater pedal pressure and the distance required for braking will be greater.
- If the brake pedal does not return to the initial height or the travel of the brake pedal has increased, this indicates that there is a failure in the brake system. Consult a Chevrolet dealer immediately.
- The brake fluid level in the reservoir should be checked regularly.
- Check the brake lamps regularly.

Floor Mat

Warning

- Make sure that the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.
- If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or the brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration, increased stopping distance or difficulty on gear shifting, which can result in a crash and injury.
- The original floor mats have been designed for your vehicle. If they need to be replaced, choose original Chevrolet replacements. Floor mats which were not designed for your vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

may not fit properly and interfere with the pedal functions.

Follow the instructions in order to use your floor mats properly.

- Always ensure that the floor mats are not interfering with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat facing up. Do not use it facing down.
- Do not place anything on the floor mat on the driver's side.
- Use only one floor mat on the driver's side. Never put one floor mat on top of the other.

Braking

Applying the Brakes

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. This is perception time. Then you have to bring up your foot to do

it. This is reaction time. Average reaction time is about 3/4 of a second, but that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination and eyesight will play a part. So will the use of alcohol and drugs. But even in 3/4 of a second, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h travels 20 m. That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important. And of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road (whether it is pavement or gravel); the condition of the road (wet, dry); tire tread and your brakes. Nevertheless, some people overload the brake system when they use the brakes incorrectly.

Observe the following

- Do not obstruct the brake pedal travel.

- Avoid needless heavy braking - some people drive in spurts - heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking - rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. Your brakes will wear much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. There is also the risk of dangerous skids.
- To increase your brake life, try to follow the traffic pace, avoid needless braking and allow for safe following distances. If you ever have to use the brakes to slow down, apply them gently and continuously.
- Do not drive with the engine off. The brake booster will not function, requiring more effort to make the brakes work.
- If your engine stops while you are driving, brake normally but do not pump your brakes, otherwise the vacuum of power assist will be used up, resulting the brake pedal being harder to push and longer braking distances.

208 Driving and Operating

Brake Pedal Travel

Take the vehicle to a Chevrolet dealer anytime you notice the brake pedal does not return or the brake pedal travel becomes longer. This may be an indicator of brake system failure.

Braking in Emergencies

Everybody has faced a heavy-braking situation. If the vehicle is not equipped with an Antilock Brake System, a driver's first reaction is to push the brake pedal and hold. In fact this is wrong, because it may cause the wheels to lock. When this happens the vehicle may not follow the direction of the steering and may follow the wheel direction before they locked; your vehicle may leave the road. Brake gradually. This method provides you with maximum braking and steering control. Press the brake pedal gradually and harder. In case of an emergency, you are likely to want to apply the brakes hard without locking the wheels. Release the

brake pedal if you feel or hear the wheels drag. This will help you keep steering control.

If your vehicle is equipped with Antilock Brake System, see *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ 226.

Steering

Electric Power Steering (if equipped)

For vehicles with electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If the steering assist is used for an extended period of time, power assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Steering System Messages (If equipped)* ⇨ 86. See your dealer if there is a problem.

Emergency Steering

Under some situations, steering may be more efficient than braking.

For example, if you get closer to a hill and find a truck parked in your lane or if suddenly a vehicle comes into sight from somewhere or if a child runs from behind parked vehicles and stops right in front of you.

You could avoid these problems by applying the brakes – if it is possible to stop in time. But sometimes this is not possible because there is no room. It is the time for a defensive action – by steering around the problem.

First apply the brakes – do not do it enough to lock the front wheels. With the risk of collision, it is always advisable to slow down first. Then, steer around the problem, to the right or to the left, depending on the space available. An emergency situation, as described above, will require the driver's full attention and a quick decision.

If you are holding the steering wheel as recommended in the nine and three o'clock position, you could make a 180° quick turn without taking the hands off the steering wheel. But you have to move fast, steer quickly and then straighten the wheel as soon as you have overcome the object. The fact that emergency situations are always possible is reason enough to practise defensive driving and use the safety belts correctly.

Off-Road Driving

Before Driving Off-road

Some items should be observed before driving off-road. For example:

- Be sure that all repair and maintenance services have been performed.
- Check the fuel level.
- Check spare tire pressure as specified in technical data chapter.
- Check fluid levels as specified in vehicle care chapter.

After Driving Off-road

Remove all material packed in the vehicle lower end, chassis or under the engine hood. This may be a fire hazard. After driving over mud or sand, clean and check the brake linings.

These substances may cause abnormal braking and glazed linings. Check the body, frame, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, exhaust system, fuel lines and cooling system.

During the off-road use, your vehicle will require shorter intervals between maintenance procedures.

Be Familiar with the Off-road Driving

Before starting any trip, it is advisable to practice in a safe area. The off-road driving requires some new and different abilities, such as being alert to the types of different signs. Your vision, for example, should constantly observe the ground for unexpected restrictions. Try to hear uncommon noises from tires and engine.

The vehicle control is the main point to a good off-road drive. A better way to control the vehicle is to control the speed. There are some aspects that must be observed. At high speeds:

- You get closer to objects more quickly and have less time to observe the ground restrictions.
- You have less time to react.
- The vehicle swings more when being driven over obstacles.
- You need more braking distance, especially if you are driving on unpaved roads.

210 Driving and Operating

Caution

When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can make you lose control of the steering. This could cause a collision. Therefore, when driving on-road and off-road, you and your passengers should wear seat belts.

Driving through Fog



High-level humidity in the air and heavy frost increase the possibility of fog, which may impair the visibility.

When driving through fog, the driver should slow down and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front. Do not underestimate the change of the fog density, thus avoiding the risk of an accident. Fog density is better estimated by observing the hazy view of the front vehicles lights.

Tips to Drive through Fog

- Turn on the front fog lights or low beam headlights, even during daylight.
- Do not turn on the high beam headlights.
- Use the rear window heater. Activate the windscreen wiper and washer for a few moments. The humidity on the outside of the windows might seem like fog.

- If it is almost impossible to see the outside and you need to stop, but you are not sure if you are on the road, turn on the headlights, activate the hazard warning lights and sound the horn periodically or when you notice an approaching vehicle.
- While driving through fog, do not pass vehicles unless you have good front visibility and it is safe to do so. If attempting to pass, be prepared to drop back in case of an approaching vehicle.

Driving Over Mud or Sand



Driving and Operating 211

When driving over mud or sand, maintain vehicle motion by using a low gear.

Due to the loss of traction, it becomes more difficult to steer, accelerate and brake. For better traction while driving through very loose sand, slightly relieve the tire air pressure.

Note

After driving in mud or sand, clean and check brake linings. If this is not performed, it may cause irregular braking or glassy lining. Check body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires and the exhaust system.

Driving on Wet Roads

Driving through Flooded Areas

Flooded areas should be avoided in any situation. A water covered road prevents the driver from evaluating its conditions properly.



Drive at low speed through any flooded area and make sure the water limit does not exceed the wheel center of height.



Avoid driving near large vehicles. They may create waves that can cause damage.

Caution

Water can enter the engine through the air intake system. If this happens and the vehicle stops, do not try to operate the engine again because this will increase the engine damages.

Caution

Water may have a chance to get into the drive shaft. When driving through a flooded and leveled road water is over half a wheel. Should visit the service center to check. Examine or change the drive shaft lubricant.

Driving in the Rain

Rain and wet roads can mean driving trouble. On a wet road you cannot stop, accelerate or turn as

212 Driving and Operating

well because the tire to road grip is not as good as it is on dry roads. And, if the tires do not have much tread left, you will get even less traction. If rain starts to fall while you are driving, it is always wise to go slower and be cautious.



The surface may suddenly get wet while your reflexes are still used to driving on dry roads. The heavier the rain, the harder it is to be seen. Even if your windscreen wiper blades are in good shape, a heavy rain can make it harder to see road signs and traffic signals, road markings, the edge of the road, and

even people walking. The road spray can make vision harder than the rain itself, especially on a dirty road.

It is wise to keep your wiping equipment in good shape and have the windshield washer tank filled. Replace the windshield wiper blades when they show signs of wear or miss areas on the windshield, or when strips of rubber start to separate from the blades.

The water may affect your brakes. Try to avoid flooded areas, but if you cannot, try to slow down before you hit them. Wet brakes can cause accidents. They will not work well in a sudden stop and may cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car wash, apply the brake pedal lightly until the brakes work normally.

Some Tips to Observe for Rainy Weather

- Turn on the low beam headlights, even during daylight.

- Turn on the wiper blades.
- Slow down and be cautious.
- Increase the distance from the vehicle in front.
- Use the rear window heater if required.

Note

When it is raining, the tires and the wiper blades have a higher workload. Therefore, always keep the tires and the wiper blades in good condition.

Hydroplaning



Excess water on the ground may lead the vehicle to hydroplane. When hydroplaning occurs, the vehicle loses contact with the road and the driver cannot control it.

Note

It is possible that the driver does not realize when the vehicle is hydroplaning and continues to drive even when the wheels are not in contact with the ground.

To avoid hydroplaning, the driver must slow down the vehicle when passing through a water puddle or when the road is wet.

Caution

If the tire tread is overly worn out it may easier cause hydroplaning.

Driving at Night



While driving at night, the driver must:

- Keep extra distance from the vehicle in front. The reflexes are slowed due to the darkness.
- Slow down the vehicle and be cautious.
- When an oncoming vehicle is noticed in the opposite lane, switch the high beam to low beam.

Hill and Mountain Roads

If the vehicle is driven frequently on mountains and hills, it must be in good condition. The fluids, tires and brake pads must be checked in specific intervals, see *Scheduled Maintenance* ⇨ 303.

Downhill Road

On a downhill slope, avoid the unnecessary use of brakes. The vehicle speed can be slowed through a shift to a reduced gear.

The Hill Descent Control (HDC) system can be activated to avoid using the brakes on a downhill slope, if it is available on your vehicle.

Note

The advice for driving a vehicle on a downhill slope is to keep the engine running and a gear engaged. Do not drive with the engine turned off or with the gear shifted into neutral.

214 Driving and Operating

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Bouncing the vehicle

The bouncing method may help while the vehicle is stuck. To do that, the driver must follow the steps below.

1. Turn the steering wheel to the right and to the left.
2. Alternate the transmission between first, second and reverse gear, releasing the throttle when shifting.
3. After the transmission is shifted, slightly press the accelerator.
4. If the vehicle is still stuck after a few tries, it has to be towed.

Caution

The movement of the wheels while the vehicle is stuck can cause tyre blow out and transmission overheating.

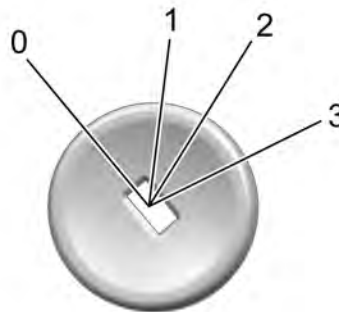
Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Use the following precautions for the first few hundred kilometres to improve the performance and economy of your vehicle:

- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Do not race the engine.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies. This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid quick starts, sudden accelerations, and prolonged high-speed driving in order to avoid damage to the engine and to save fuel.
- Avoid full throttle acceleration in low gear.
- Do not tow any other vehicle.

Ignition Positions

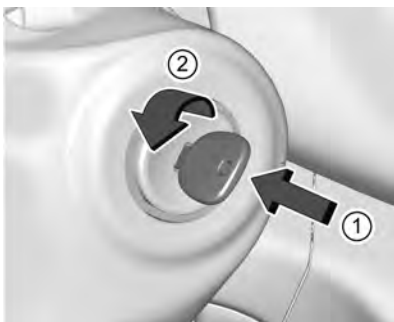


0. Stopping the Engine/LOCK/OFF
1. ACC/ACCESSORY
2. ON/RUN
3. START

The ignition switch has four positions.

To shift out of P (Park), the ignition must be ON/RUN and the brake pedal must be applied.

0 (Stopping the Engine/LOCK/OFF) : This position turns off the vehicle. It also locks the ignition, the transmission, and the steering column, if equipped with a locking steering column.



To turn off the vehicle:

1. Make sure that the vehicle is stopped.
2. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission.

3. Continue to hold the brake pedal, then set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake* ⇨ 226.
4. Push the key all the way in toward the steering column, then turn the key to LOCK/OFF.
5. Remove the key.
6. Release the brake pedal.

See your dealer if the key can be removed in any other position.

A warning chime will sound when the driver door is opened and the key is in the ignition.

If equipped with a locking steering column, the steering can bind with the front wheels turned off center, which may prevent key rotation out of LOCK/OFF. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this does not work, then the vehicle needs service.

Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, turn off the vehicle only in an emergency.

In an emergency, if the vehicle cannot be pulled over and must be turned off while driving:

1. Push the key all the way in toward the steering column, then turn the key to ACC/ACCESSORY.
2. Brake using firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
3. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. Continue braking and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
4. Come to a complete stop.

216 Driving and Operating

5. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission.
6. Continue to hold the brake pedal, then set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake* ⇨ 226.
7. Push the key all the way in toward the steering column, then turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
8. Remove the key.
9. Release the brake pedal.

Caution

Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in — or pushed all the way in toward the steering column when turning off the vehicle — and turn it only with your hand.

1 (ACC/ACCESSORY) : This position allows features such as the infotainment system to operate

while the vehicle is off. It also unlocks the steering column, if equipped with a locking steering column. Use this position if the vehicle must be pushed or towed.

From ON/RUN, push the key all the way in toward the steering column, then turn the key to ACC/ACCESSORY.

If the key is left in ACC/ACCESSORY with the engine off, the battery could drain and the vehicle may not start.

A warning chime will sound when the driver door is opened and the key is in the ignition.

2 (ON/RUN) : This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument cluster warning and indicator lights. This position can also be used for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. The switch stays in this position

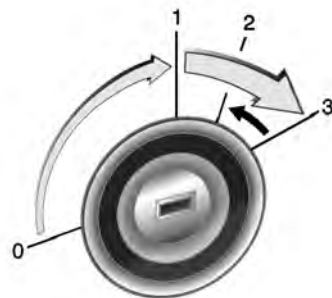
when the engine is running. The transmission is also unlocked in this position.

If the key is left in ON/RUN with the engine off, the battery could drain and the vehicle may not start.

3 (START) : This is the position that starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition returns to ON/RUN for driving.


Starting the Engine

Starting Engine with the Ignition Switch



- Turn the key to position **1**. Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Manual transmission: press the clutch pedal.

Automatic transmission: when the ignition key is in the position **2**, press the brake pedal to move the selector lever in **P** or **N**. Do not accelerate.

- Diesel engines: turn the key to position **ON (2)** for preheating. Until the indicator  goes out.
- Turn the key to position **3** and release when engine is running.

To restart the engine, turning the key to position **0** is not necessary. The engine can be switched off by turning to position **1**.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Power Outlet
- Power Windows

These features work when the key is in **ON/RUN** or **ACC/ACCESSORY**. Once the key is turned from **ON/RUN** to **LOCK/OFF**, power to these features continue to work for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened.

Overrun Cut-Off

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but the throttle is released.

Parking

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply the parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on downhill or uphill slopes. Press the foot brake at the same time to reduce operating force.

- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to **P** before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the curb.

If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to **P** before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the curb.
- Lock the vehicle and activate the anti-theft alarm system.

218 Driving and Operating

Parking over Things That Burn



Before parking the vehicle, be sure the ground does not contain any flammable material like grass, shrubs, fuel drops, etc. The engine exhaust is heated and can start a fire.

Engine Exhaust

Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled. If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a Chevrolet Dealer. Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gas.

Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed could damage the catalytic converter or electronic

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a Chevrolet dealer as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits manual gear shifting (manual mode) or automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) of the gears.

Transmission Display



The mode or selected gear is shown in the central display of the instrument panel.

Selector Lever



P : Parking position, wheels are locked, engage only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied

R : Reverse gear, engage only when vehicle is stationary

N : Neutral

D : Automatic mode

The selector lever is locked in **P**. To move, switch on ignition, apply brake pedal and push the release button.

To engage from **P** to **R**, press the brake pedal and push the release button.

To start the engine, press the brake pedal in either **P** or **N** position.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the throttle pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to move when the brake is released.

Engine Braking

To utilize the engine braking effect, select a lower gear when driving downhill.

Rocking the Vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between **D** and **R** in a repeated pattern. Do not race the engine.

220 Driving and Operating

Parking

Apply the parking brake, engage **P** and remove the ignition key.

Manual Mode



Move the selector lever out of position **D** towards the left and then forwards or backwards as desired.

+ : Upshift

- : Downshift

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed.

If the engine speed is too low, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower gear.

No automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine speed.


Electronic Driving Programs

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature program increases engine speed to bring the catalytic converter quickly to the required temperature.

Kickdown

If the throttle pedal is pressed down completely in automatic mode, depending on the engine speed, the transmission shifts to a lower gear.

Fault

In the event of a fault, the malfunction indicator light  illuminates. The transmission will no longer shift automatically or manually because it is locked in a certain gear.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a Chevrolet dealer.

Interruption of Power Supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position. The ignition key cannot be moved out of the ignition lock.

If the battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump cables, see *Jump Starting* ⇨ 293.

If the battery is not the cause of the fault, release selector the lever and remove the ignition key from the ignition lock.

Release Selector Lever

1. Apply the parking brake.



2. Open the cover to the right of the selector lever.



3. Insert a screwdriver in the hole until the lever is unlocked, move the selector lever out of **P** position and move to the **N** position.
4. Close cover.

Manual Transmission

To engage reverse, with the vehicle stationary, press the clutch pedal.

Press and hold the lever down while moving the lever to the right and back towards the position **R**.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever in neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.



Do not press the clutch pedal unnecessarily.

222 Driving and Operating

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

Caution

It is inadvisable to drive with hand resting on the selector lever.

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive

If the vehicle has four-wheel drive, you can send the engine driving power to all four wheels for extra traction.

To get the best performance out of four-wheel drive, you must be familiar with its operation. You should use two-wheel drive high for most normal driving conditions.

Note

Driving on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for an extended period of time can cause premature wear on the vehicle drivetrain.

Note

Do not engage four-wheel drive if wheels of different sizes are fitted as damage to the vehicle can result. The repair would not be covered by the warranty.

The transfer case shift control switch is located either on the central area of the instrument panel

or to the side of the parking brake handle on the console between the front seats.



Rotate the shift control switch to shift into and out of four-wheel drive. You can choose from the following:

2^H (Two-Wheel High) : This setting is for driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in two-wheel drive.

N (Neutral) : Shift the vehicle transfer case to N (Neutral) only when towing the vehicle.

 **Warning**

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking* ⇨ 217

4↑ (Four-Wheel High) : This setting engages the front axle to help drive the vehicle. Use four-wheel high when you need extra traction, such as on snowy or icy roads, or in most off road situations.

4↓ (Four-Wheel Low) : This setting also engages the front axle to give you extra traction. It sends the maximum power to all four wheels.

You might choose four-wheel low if you were driving off-road in sand, mud, or deep snow and while climbing or descending steep hills. Shifting into four-wheel low will turn

off engine traction control and stability control, see *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 227.

Indicator lights on the shift control switch indicate which setting you are in. The indicator lights will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition and the selected setting will remain on. If the lights do not come on, you should take the vehicle in for service. An indicator light will flash while shifting. It will stay on when the shift is completed. If the transfer case does not shift, it will return to the last chosen setting.

When the ignition key is in the position **2**, the transfer case shift control module monitors the transfer case shift control switch to determine if the driver desires a new setting. At a turn of the transfer case shift control switch, the lamp of the new desired setting will begin to flash to inform the driver that the transfer case shift control module has received the request for a new setting. The lamp continues to flash until all shifting criteria has been met and the new setting has been

reached or has been engaged. Once the new setting is fully active, the switch indicator lamp for the new setting will remain on constantly.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High to Four-Wheel High (2↑ to 4↑)

Rotate the shift control switch from two-wheel high **2** ↑ to the four-wheel high **4** ↑ setting. This can be done at any speed below 120 km/h.

Shifting from Four-Wheel High to Two-Wheel High (4↑ to 2↑)

Rotate the shift control switch to the two-wheel high **2** ↑ position. This can be done at any speed. It is normal to hear and feel the vehicle transfer case shift out of four-wheel high **4** ↑.

224 Driving and Operating

Shifting from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low (2↑ or 4↑ to 4↓)

To shift from Two-Wheel High 2 ↑ or four-wheel high 4 ↑ to four-wheel low 4 ↓, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal pressed for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting into four-wheel low 4 ↓ is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the shift control switch to the four-wheel low 4 ↓ setting. You must wait for the four-wheel low 4 ↓ indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal. If four-wheel low setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the four-wheel low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

Shifting from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High (4↓ to 2↑ or 4↑)

To shift from four-wheel low 4 ↓ to two-wheel high 2 ↑ or four-wheel high 4 ↑, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal pressed for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting out of four-wheel low 4 ↓ is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the shift control switch to the two-wheel high 2 ↑ or four-wheel high 4 ↑ position. You must wait for the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal. If two-wheel high or four-wheel high setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light will

flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

Shifting to Neutral (2↑, 4↑ or 4↓ to Neutral)

Use N (Neutral) when you plan to tow the vehicle. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ 294 for towing instructions. The vehicle must be stopped. To shift the transfer case into N (Neutral) with the key on position **ON**, do the following:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Press the brake pedal and shift the transmission in N (Neutral), or press the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission.
4. Shift the transfer case to two-wheel high 2 ↑.
5. Rotate the shift control switch clockwise past four-wheel low 4 ↓ to N (Neutral). Hold the switch in the N (Neutral) setting for at least 20 seconds or wait until the red Neutral indicator

light stops flashing and stays on. The N (Neutral) red indicator light will come on when the transfer case shift to N (Neutral) is complete.

Note

Upon releasing the shift control switch from NEUTRAL (**N**) setting, the switch will rotate to the four-wheel low (**4 ↓**) setting. The transfer case will remain in NEUTRAL with RED NEUTRAL (**N**) indicator light illuminated until a new setting is selected.

6. Press and hold the brake pedal and shift the transmission to **R** (Reverse) for 1 second, then shift the transmission to **D** (Drive) for 1 second, or 1 (First) for vehicles with manual transmissions and let out the clutch to insure the transfer case is in **N** (Neutral). If the transfer case is not in **N** (Neutral), repeat this procedure starting at Step 3.
7. Turn the engine off by turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY.

8. Place the transmission selector lever in **P** (Park), or **1** (First) for vehicles that have a manual transmission.
9. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

This **N** (Neutral) setting is a four-wheel drive neutral, meaning the front and rear outputs of the transfer case are disengaged. With a disengaged transfer, there is no power flow the either axle, thus allowing towing without the driveline binding.

Shifting Out of Neutral

After towing the vehicle, you will have to shift out of **N** (Neutral) in order to drive. To shift out of **N** (Neutral), do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle or keep the engine off and turn the key to the **ON** (2) position.
3. Apply the brake pedal and shift the transmission to **N** (Neutral) position or, for vehicles with a manual transmission press the clutch pedal.

4. Rotate the transfer case shift control switch from the four-wheel low **4 ↓** setting to the desired setting.

226 Driving and Operating

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be stopped using the other brake circuit. However, braking is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. More force is needed for this. The braking distance is increased. Seek immediately the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer before continuing your journey.

When the engine is not running, the brake assist disappears once the brake pedal has been pressed once or twice. Braking is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

See *Brake and Clutch System Warning Light* ⇨ 75.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off, the system performs a self test which may be audible.

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ 76.

Fault

Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a Chevrolet dealers.

Parking Brake

Always apply parking brake firmly without pressing the release button and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, press the foot brake at the same time.

See *Brake and Clutch System Warning Light* ⇨ 75.

Brake Assist

Brake Assist detects rapid brake pedal applies due to emergency braking situations and provides additional braking to activate the Antilock Brake System (ABS) if the brake pedal is not pushed hard enough to activate ABS normally. Minor noise, brake pedal pulsation, and/or pedal movement during this time may occur. Continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. Brake Assist disengages when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

In vehicles equipped with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system the Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature is available. HSA may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade.


This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After you completely stop and hold the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will automatically activate. During the transition period between when you release the brake pedal and start to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of 2 (two) seconds to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the 2 (two) second window. The HSA system will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse). There may be situations on minor hills (less than 5% grade) with a loaded vehicle or while pulling a trailer where HSA will not activate. If you release the brake pedal and then reapply the brake pedal while HSA is activated, the brake pedal typically feels firmer with less pedal travel.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

Traction Control System (TCS) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip, by preventing the driving wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driving wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

When TCS is active,  flashes.

Warning


Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Adapt speed to the road conditions.


See *Control Indicators* ⇨ 70.

228 Driving and Operating

Deactivation



Traction Control can be switched off when spinning of the traction wheel is required: press button  for approximately 2 seconds and a message will appear on the Driver Information Center.


Traction Control is reactivated by pressing the  button again.

Traction Control is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip. It also prevents the driving wheels from spinning.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer/oversteer), the engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

ESC is operational as soon as the control indicator  turns off.

When ESC is active  flashes.


Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Adapt speed to the road conditions.


See *Control Indicators* ⇨ 70.

Deactivation



For very high-performance driving, ESC can be deactivated: hold button  for approximately 7 seconds.

Control indicator  illuminates.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the  button again. If the TC System was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

When the ESC system is actively improving the stability of the vehicle, reduce the speed and pay extra attention to the road conditions. The ESC system is only a supplementary device for the vehicle. When the vehicle exceeds its physical limits, it can no longer be controlled. Therefore do not rely on this system. Keep driving safely.

Hill Descent Control (HDC)




The Hill Descent Control system (HDC) allows the vehicle to travel on a steep decline at a low speed without pressing the brake pedal. If equipped, HDC can be used when driving downhill. It sets and maintains vehicle speed while descending a very steep incline in a forward or reverse gear. Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be noticed, when the system is in operation.

Caution

Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the HDC function, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.

Activation



At speeds below 30 km/h, press button . The green control indicator  will turn on in the instrument panel. The green control indicator  will flashes in the instrument panel when the HDC is in operation. HDC will neither activate nor operate at speeds above 30 km/h, even if the button is pressed.

HDC can maintain vehicle speeds between minimum speed of approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or approximately 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission) on an incline greater than or equal to a 5% grade. A blinking HDC light indicates that the system is actively applying the brakes to maintain vehicle speed. When HDC is set, that is the initial set speed. It can be increased or decreased by applying the accelerator or brake pedal. This adjusted speed becomes the new set speed. When enabled, if the vehicle is at a speed above 30 km/h and below than 50 km/h, the

230 Driving and Operating


message "Reduce Speed for Hill Descent Control" will display on DIC.

When the HDC is active and the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h, the green control indicator will turn off, while the HDC function remains on stand by.

Once the vehicle speed goes below 30 km/h, the green control indicator will illuminate, indicating that the system is activated again.

When the HDC is on stand by, and the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h, the HDC deactivates. Following this the system will need to be reactivated through the HDC switch once the vehicle speed falls below 30 km/h.

Deactivation

While HDC is active and the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h, press button  to deactivate the system. The green control indicator will turn off indicating the system is no

longer active. The system will automatically deactivate once the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h.

System Protection

Operated continuously for long periods of time may increase temperatures within the brake system. If this occurs the system will be automatically put on hold, temporarily disabling HDC.

In this mode, all other braking functions will continue to operate normally. When this occurs the system gradually releases the brakes and the green control indicator will turn off.

Once the system returns to normal operating temperatures, the system will be able to be reactivated using the HDC switch at speeds below 30 km/h as usual.

See *Hill Descent Control Light* ⇨ 77

Cruise Control

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds of approximately 40 to 180 km/h. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

For safety reasons the cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once.




Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.


With automatic transmission, only activate cruise control in automatic mode.

See *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ 81.

Switching On

Press the **ON OFF** push-lock button. The control indicator  illuminates white.

Activation

Accelerate to the desired speed and push the lever down to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained. The control indicator  changes from white to green to indicate that the cruise control is active. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the throttle pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed. Cruise control will remain activated while shifting gears with manual transmission.

Increase Speed


With cruise control active, hold the lever pushed up to **RES/+** or briefly push to **RES/+** repeatedly; speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.

Reduce Speed

With cruise control active, hold the lever pushed up to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-** repeatedly; speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation


Press the **CANCEL** push-lock button. The control indicator  illuminates white. Cruise control is deactivated. The stored speed is memorized.

Automatic deactivation:


- Vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h.
- The brake pedal is pressed.

- The clutch pedal is pressed for more than a few seconds (depending on the vehicle configuration).
- Selector lever in **N**.
- The Traction Control System or Electronic Stability Control is operating.

Resume Stored Speed

Move the lever up to **RES/+** at a speed above 40 km/h. The stored speed will be obtained. The control indicator  changes from white to green to indicate that the cruise control is active. If the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is more than 40 km/h, the vehicle cannot resume the stored speed.

Switching Off

Press the **ON OFF** push-lock button. The control indicator  turns off. The stored speed is deleted. Switching off the ignition also deletes the stored speed.

232 Driving and Operating

Object Detection Systems

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert and rapidly beeps. FCA also lights a amber visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m (197 ft) and operates at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph).



Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ 204.

FCA can be disabled with the FCA steering wheel control.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead



FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will

display green. Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.



Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windshield is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windshield are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windshield, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

 **Warning**

Poor illumination conditions will prejudice the camera identification of vehicles ahead.

Motorcycles may not be detected by the camera when its is dark enough outside.

Collision Alert


Cluster Alert



Reflected LED Alert



When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash and sound several high-pitched beeps from the front. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

Press  on the steering wheel to adjust the alert sensibility. Each press cycles the alert sensibility through three settings: Far, Medium, Near or Off.

When pressed, the current alert sensibility setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster. The alert sensibility setting will be maintained until it is changed.

Note

Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following alert sensibility. The range

of selectable alert sensibility may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Tailgating Alert



The amber Collision Alert display will stay continuously illuminated when following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

234 Driving and Operating

Selecting the Alert Timing



The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press COLLISION ALERT to set the FCA timing to far, medium, near, or off. The first button press shows the current control setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather

conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

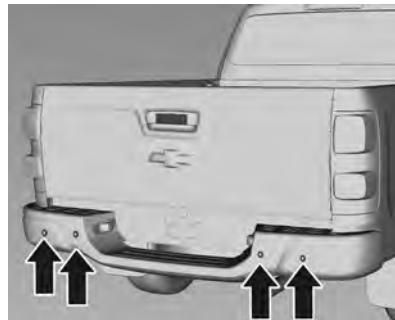
Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

Parking Assist

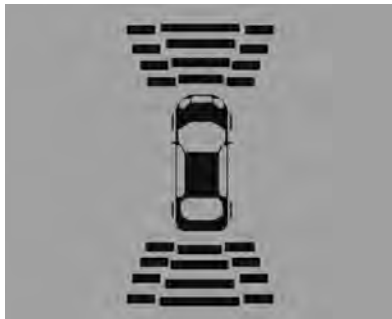


Driving and Operating 235


Warning

The parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and the obstacles and giving acoustic signals. It is the driver, however, who bears full responsibility for the parking maneuver.

With Rear Parking Assist (RPA), and if equipped with Front Parking Assist (FPA), as the vehicle moves at speeds of less than 11 km/h (7 mph) the sensors on the bumpers may detect objects up to 2.3 m (8 ft) behind and 1.0 m (3 ft) in front of the vehicle within a zone 25 cm (10 in) high off the ground and below bumper level. These detection distances may be shorter during warmer or humid weather. Blocked sensors will not detect objects and can also cause false detections. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures. Beeps for FPA are higher pitched than for RPA.



The instrument cluster may have a parking assist display with bars that show “distance to object” and object location information for the Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up.

For vehicles with rear view camera, the information display will show the symbol . As the object gets closer, the symbol will get bigger and its color changes from amber to red.

The system consists of four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper and four ultrasonic parking sensors in the front bumper (if equipped).

Danger

The Parking Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 11 km/h (7 mph). To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.

Note

Attached parts in the detection area cause system malfunction.

Activation

When reverse gear is engaged, the system is activated automatically.

236 Driving and Operating

An obstacle is indicated by acoustic warnings. The interval between the warnings becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm, the acoustic warning sounds continuously.

Note

The acoustic warning sounds stop to work if vehicle stop for 3 seconds or more (except in continuous sound)

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when:

- The vehicle is driven above 11 km/h — front and rear parking assist is deactivated.
- The reverse gear is disengaged — rear parking assist is deactivated.
- A fault in the system occurs.

The system can be manually turned off by pressing the **P** button of the instrument panel while Parking Assist is on.

Pressing the **P** button while Parking Assist is off will allow the system to turn on when activation parameters are met.

Fault

To test a possible fault:

1. Park the vehicle on an area with no obstacles in a range of 2 meters of the rear bumper.
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Turn the ignition key to **ON**.
4. Engage reverse.
5. When the reverse gear is engaged:
 - If there is no acoustic signal: Check the power supply of the kit module, by verifying that the reverse lights are working.
 - If just one acoustic signal is given followed shortly after by an almost continuous acoustic signal, it indicates a fault sign: Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

- If one acoustic signal is given followed by separate acoustic signals like when the vehicle gets closer to an object: Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.
- If two acoustic signals are given:
Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Turning the Features On or Off



The **P** button of the instrument panel is used to turn on or off the Front and Rear Parking Assist. The indicator LED next to the button

comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off parking assist when towing a trailer.

Important Pieces of Information about the use of the Parking Assist System

Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Caution

Sensitivity of the sensor could be reduced caused by external influences, e.g. layers on the
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

sensor surface (ice, snow, mud, soiling, multiple varnishing/painting, etc.).

The sensor could detect a non-existing object (echo disturbance) caused by either external acoustical disturbances, such as another park assist system, or external mechanic disturbances such as a car wash, rain, extreme wind conditions, hail, etc.

Performance of the parking assist system could be reduced due to the change of the sensor position by external changes to the vehicle, e.g. lowering of the shock absorber over lifetime due to: temperature changes, changing of tyres, loading of the vehicle, lowering/tuning of the vehicle etc.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Particular conditions apply for high vehicles (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, transporters). Object identification in the upper part of the vehicle can not be guaranteed.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The vehicle may have a RVC.

Warning

Never rely solely on the rear view camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that can not be sensed by the rear view camera.

(Continued)

238 Driving and Operating

Warning (Continued)

The rear view camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention toward the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle, always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the rear view camera, the camera may become misaligned. Contact a Chevrolet Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

The Camera



The camera is located on the rear tailgate.

The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the bumper
- Forward of the camera
- Higher than the camera

RVC Display

The camera display appears on the infotainment system display, when reverse gear is selected.

The area directly behind the vehicle is displayed in real time.

Note

- The distance of objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.
- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The display brightness automatically adjusts to suit ambient lighting conditions.
- Guidelines to assist reversing can be displayed on the display. See "Infotainment System" for more information.

Operating the RVC

To activate:

1. Turn the ignition key to **ON**.
2. Select reverse gear.

The camera and display automatically activates.

Note

When the shift lever is moved to another position, the RVC deactivates.

Cleaning

The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.

Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

Warning

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the systems performance.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide an alert if the vehicle is crossing a lane without using a turn signal in that direction. LDW uses a camera to detect the lane markings at speeds of 60 km/h or greater.

Danger

The LDW system does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice; if they are not in proper condition; or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Always keep your

(Continued)


240 Driving and Operating

Danger (Continued)



attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windshield, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

How the System Works

The LDW camera is on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror.

To turn LDW on and off, press the  button on the instrument panel. The button indicator illuminates when LDW is on.



When LDW is on,  is green if LDW is available to warn of a lane departure. If the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction,  changes to amber and flashes. Additionally, there will be three beeps on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

The system may not detect lanes as well when there are:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.

If the LDW system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system

operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LDW off if these conditions continue.

Intelligent Alert Suppression

The system alerts may be suppressed in the following conditions:

- Braking (obstacle avoidance).
- Acceleration (passing another vehicle).
- Constant curves with great steering wheel interaction (driving downhill).
- Turn signal activated.

Fuel

Fuel Additives

GM recommends the use of ACDelco Diesel Fuel conditioner. This will help maintain optimal engine performance. GM does not recommend other aftermarket diesel additives.

In the event you refuel using low-quality diesel, GM recommends adding ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus-Diesel to the vehicle's fuel tank. ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus-Diesel can help clean engine deposits and is available only at your GM dealership.

Fuel for Diesel Engines

The selection of a high-quality fuel is important for maintaining optimum vehicle performance. Diesel fuel should meet or exceed the minimum requirements in the most current versions of the local fuel standards.

Do not use fuel with more than 15 ppm sulfur. If available, use of diesel fuel with less sulfur is highly recommended for better emissions. In countries where 15 ppm or lower sulfur is not available, do not use diesel fuel with sulfur great than 50 ppm. In these countries only, the vehicle is already designed to accommodate this level of sulfur.

Do not use a diesel blend containing more than 10% biodiesel by volume.

Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply with the required technical standards can lead to engine power loss, increased wear, or engine damage and may void your warranty.

Some improper fuels are:

- Diesel fuel with the addition of gasoline.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Diesel fuel mixed with engine oil or automatic transmission fluid.
- Triglyceride fuels, such as raw vegetable oil or animal fat, in any form, including with blends of diesel or biodiesel.
- Marine diesel fuel and fuel oils.
- Diesel-water emulsions, such as Aquazole.
- Aftermarket diesel fuel additives, which contain alcohols, organo-metallic additives, or water emulsifiers.

242 Driving and Operating

Caution

If the vehicle is accidentally refueled with gasoline, do not continue driving the vehicle. Driving the vehicle will damage the fuel system. Have the vehicle towed to a qualified technician to have the gasoline removed from the tank and fuel system. Refuel with Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel. It is also recommended to have the fuel system flushed with Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel, to ensure all gasoline is removed.

Some conditions, such as dirty fuel, may decrease fuel filter life and a CHANGE FUEL FILTER message may come on in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

Climate Grade Diesel Fuels

At temperatures below 0 °C (32 °F), avoid using biodiesel blends above 5% by volume. Using such a fuel may cause fuel filter plugging,

system gelling, and freezing, which may adversely impact vehicle starting.

Severe winter grade diesel fuel, such as 1-D diesel fuel or Arctic grade diesel fuel, can be used in extreme cold temperatures (below -18 °C or 0 °F); however, doing so will reduce power and fuel economy. Avoid using severe winter grade fuel in warm or hot climates. It can result in stalling, poor starting, and damage to the fuel injection system.

Fuels improperly blended for cold temperature operation may result in restricted fuel filters. The vehicle is equipped with a fuel heating system to prevent gelling or waxing of conventional diesel fuel and biodiesel blends, but may not prevent all cases.

In case of severe winter conditions, the fuel filter may become clogged by wax naturally present in the fuel. To unclog it, move the vehicle to a warm garage area and allow the filter to warm up. The fuel filter may need to be replaced. See your dealer.

Biodiesel

Biodiesel is a renewable fuel produced from vegetable oils or animal fats that have been chemically modified to make it compatible with diesel fuel.

Caution

Do not use home-made biodiesel or home test kits because the quality cannot be verified by approved scientific methods. Do not use raw vegetable oil or other unmodified bio-oils, fats, or blends of vegetable oil with diesel. They could damage the fuel system and engine, and damages would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Biodiesel Blends

Fuels with a biodiesel content up to 10% by volume may be used (e.g., named B10). Only use biodiesel blends up to 10% by volume that comply with your country's or region's fuel standards.

Caution

Do not use blends containing more than 10% biodiesel. Any engine, fuel system, or exhaust after-treatment system damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

As a renewable fuel, biodiesel provides some environmental benefits. However, biodiesel has unique properties and needs to be handled differently than diesel fuel. Its use presents additional risks and may not be appropriate in all situations. Certain vehicle operating modes increase these risks and should be avoided.

Biodiesel fuel quality degrades with time and exposure to high temperature quicker than Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel. More frequent refueling provides the best opportunity to have a supply of fresh fuel. Storage at hot ambient temperatures will accelerate biodiesel degradation.

Owners who use little fuel, or who have vehicles stored for extended periods of time, should avoid the use of biodiesel blended fuels above 5% by volume. When vehicles are stored for longer than one month, they should be run out of biodiesel to below one quarter tank, refueled with biodiesel-free diesel fuel, and driven several kilometers (miles) before storage.

Filling the Tank

Caution

If you use inappropriate grade fuel or put incorrect fuel additives into the fuel tank, the engine and catalytic converter may be seriously damaged.

Be sure to use the correct fuel corresponding to the vehicle when refuelling. If you put gasoline in the diesel powered vehicle, for example, the vehicle can be seriously damaged. If the

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

vehicle has a diesel engine, it is possible to confirm the correct fuel by taking a look at the information on the fuel filler cap.

Danger

Before refueling, switch off the engine and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Switch off any electronic devices.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No open flames or sparks. If you can smell fuel in

(Continued)

244 Driving and Operating

Danger (Continued)

your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Chevrolet dealer.

Caution

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler door is located at the left rear side of vehicle.



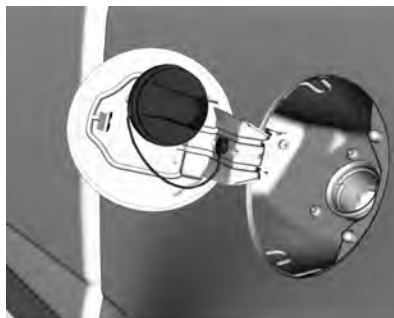
The fuel filler door can only be opened if the release button is pulled.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

Fuel Filler Cap

Only a genuine fuel filler cap provides full functionality.



The fuel filler cap can be put in the fuel filler door while refuelling.

Caution

The fuel filler door might be open and it can be damaged in the car wash.

Make sure to lock the fuel filler door.

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle to tow a trailer. Read the entire section before towing a trailer.

Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

Warning

You can lose control when towing a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy or the trailer brakes are inadequate for the load, the vehicle may not stop as expected. You and others could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Driving with a Trailer

Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

When towing a trailer:

- Do not tow a trailer during the first 800 km (500 mi) of vehicle use to prevent damage to the engine, axle, or other parts.
- It is recommended to perform the first oil change before heavy towing.
- During the first 800 km (500 mi) of trailer towing, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle.
- Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). If the transmission downshifts too often, a lower gear may be selected using Manual Mode. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ 220.

Warning

To prevent serious injury or death from carbon monoxide (CO), when towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window open.

(Continued)

246 Driving and Operating

Warning (Continued)

- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air. See "Climate Control Systems" in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ 218.

Towing a trailer requires experience. The combination of the vehicle and trailer is longer and not as responsive as the vehicle itself. Get used to the handling and braking of the combination by driving on a level road surface before driving on public roads.

The trailer structure, the tires, and the brakes must all be rated to carry the intended cargo. Inadequate trailer equipment can cause the combination to operate in an

unexpected or unsafe manner. Before driving, inspect all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires, and mirrors. See *Towing Equipment* ⇨ 249. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the combination moving and then manually apply the trailer brake controller to check the trailer brakes work. During the trip, occasionally check that the cargo and trailer are secure and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are working.

Towing with a Stability Control System

When towing, the stability control system might be heard. The system reacts to vehicle movement caused by the trailer, which mainly occurs during cornering. This is normal when towing heavier trailers.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving without a trailer. This can help to avoid heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. The combination of the vehicle and trailer will not accelerate as quickly and is much longer than the vehicle alone. It is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane. Pass on level roadways. Avoid passing on hills if possible.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. To move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move that hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Caution

Turn more slowly and make wider arcs when towing a trailer to prevent damage to your vehicle. Making very sharp turns could cause the trailer to contact the vehicle.

Make wider turns than normal when towing, so trailer will not go over soft shoulders, over curbs, or strike road signs, trees, or other objects. Always signal turns well in advance. Do not steer or brake suddenly.

Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before starting down a long or steep downhill grade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes may overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

The vehicle can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.

When towing at higher altitudes, engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at lower altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle could show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run, preferably on level ground, with the transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 260.

Parking on Hills

Warning

To prevent serious injury or death, always park your vehicle and trailer on a level surface when possible.

When parking your vehicle and your trailer on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, gradually release the brake pedal to allow the chocks to absorb the load of the trailer.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
 - Start the engine.
 - Shift into a gear.
 - Release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.

248 Driving and Operating

3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when used to tow trailers. See *Scheduled Maintenance* ⇨ 303. It is especially important to check the automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system, and brake system before and during each trip.

Check periodically to see that all nuts and bolts on the trailer hitch are tight.

Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

The cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ 260.

Trailer Towing

Trailer towing is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailer towing means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailer towing takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailer towing tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Caution

Towing a trailer improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. To tow a trailer correctly, follow the directions in this section and see your dealer for important information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Trailer Weight



Never exceed the towing capacity for your vehicle.

Safe trailer towing requires monitoring the weight, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature, dimensions of the front of the trailer, and how frequently the vehicle is used to tow a trailer.

Maximum Trailer Weight

For maximum towing mass information, see *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 311.

Weights listed apply for conventional trailers unless otherwise noted.

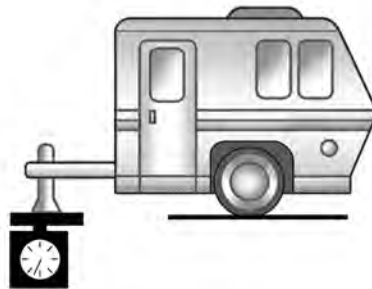
Maximum Trailer Tongue Weight Rating

Warning

You and others could be seriously injured or killed if the trailer is too heavy or the trailer brakes are inadequate for the load. The vehicle may be damaged, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Only tow a trailer if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer.

The Maximum Trailer Tongue Weight Rating is the allowable trailer tongue weight that the vehicle can support using a conventional trailer hitch. It may be necessary to reduce the overall trailer weight to stay within the maximum trailer tongue weight rating while still maintaining the correct trailer load balance.



Do not exceed a maximum trailer tongue weight of 120 kg (265 lb).

Towing Equipment

Hitches

Always use the correct hitch equipment for your vehicle. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads can affect the trailer and the hitch.

Never attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches. Only use frame-mounted hitches that do not attach to the bumper.

Consider using mechanical sway controls with any trailer. Ask a trailering professional about sway controls or refer to the trailer manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

Tires

- Do not tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire on the vehicle.
- Tires must be properly inflated to support loads while towing a trailer. See *Wheels and Tires* ⇨ 279 for instructions on proper tire inflation.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer, and attach the chains to the holes on the trailer hitch platform. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer.

Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the

250 Driving and Operating

hitch. Always leave just enough slack so the combination can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Lamps

Always check all trailer lamps are working at the beginning of each trip, and periodically on longer trips.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

When properly connected, the trailer turn signals should will illuminate to indicate the vehicle is turning, changing lanes, or stopping. When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument cluster will illuminate even if the trailer is not properly connected or the bulbs are burned out.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

Vehicles with StabiliTrak have a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature. Trailer sway is unintended side-to-side motion of a trailer while towing. If the vehicle is towing a

trailer and the TSC detects that sway is increasing, the vehicle brakes are selectively applied at each wheel, to help reduce excessive trailer sway. If equipped with the Integrated Trailer Brake Control (ITBC) system, and the trailer has an electric brake system, StabiliTrak may also apply the trailer brakes.



If TSC is enabled, the Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak warning light will flash on the instrument cluster. Reduce vehicle speed by gradually removing your foot from the accelerator. If trailer sway continues, StabiliTrak can reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle. TSC will not function if StabiliTrak is turned off. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 227.

Warning

Trailer sway can result in a crash and in serious injury or death, even if the vehicle is equipped with TSC.

If the trailer begins to sway, reduce vehicle speed by gradually removing your foot from the accelerator. Then pull over to check the trailer and vehicle to help correct possible causes, including an improperly or overloaded trailer, unrestrained cargo, improper trailer hitch configuration, or improperly inflated or incorrect vehicle or trailer tires. See *Towing Equipment* ⇨ 249 for trailer ratings and hitch setup recommendations.

Trailer Tires

Special Trailer (ST) tires differ from vehicle tires. Trailer tires are designed with stiff sidewalls to help prevent sway and to support heavy

loads. These features can make it difficult to determine if the trailer tire pressures are low only based on a visual inspection.

Always check all trailer tire pressures before each trip when the tires are cool. Low trailer tire pressure is a leading cause of trailer tire blow-outs.

Trailer tires deteriorate over time. The trailer tire sidewall will show the week and year the tire was manufactured. Many trailer tire manufacturers recommend replacing tires more than six years old.

Overloading is another leading cause of trailer tire blow-outs. Never load your trailer with more weight than the tires are designed to support. The load rating is located on the trailer tire sidewall.

Always know the maximum speed rating for the trailer tires before driving. This may be significantly lower than the vehicle tire speed rating. The speed rating may be on the trailer tire sidewall. If the speed

rating is not shown, the default trailer tire speed rating is 105 km/h (65 mph).

252 Vehicle Care

Vehicle Care

General Information

Accessories and Modifications	253
Lifting the Vehicle	253
Battery Disconnect Switch	253
Vehicle Storage	254

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work	255
Hood	255
Engine Compartment Overview	257
Engine Oil	258
Automatic Transmission Fluid	259
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	259
Engine Coolant	259
Engine Overheating	260
Engine Fan	261
Power Steering Fluid (If equipped)	262
Washer Fluid	263
Brakes	263
Brake Fluid	263
Battery	264
Diesel Fuel Filter	264

Diesel Fuel System Bleeding	265
Wiper Blade Replacement	265

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement	266
Headlamps	266
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) (If equipped)	268
Fog Lamps	268
Front Turn Signal Lamps	268
Taillamps	269
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	270
License Plate Lamp	270
Interior Lamps	271
Instrument Panel Illumination	271

Electrical System

Fuses	271
Engine Compartment Fuse Block	273
Instrument Panel Fuse Block	275

Vehicle Tools

Tools	277
-------------	-----

Wheels and Tires

Wheels and Tires	279
Tire Designations	279

Tire Pressure	279
Tire Pressure Monitor System	280
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation	282
Tread Depth	284
Tire Rotation	285
When It Is Time for New Tires	285
Different Tire and Wheel Types	286
Wheel Covers	286
Wheel Replacement	287

Jump Starting

Jump Starting	293
---------------------	-----

Towing the Vehicle

Towing the Vehicle	294
Towing Another Vehicle	299

Appearance Care

Exterior Care	300
Interior Care	302

General Information

Accessories and Modifications

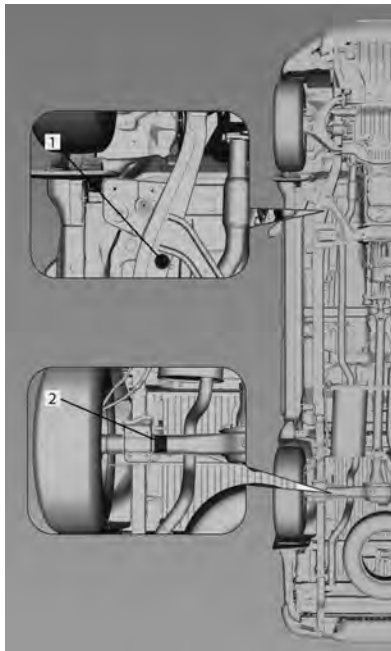
We recommend using genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee other products – even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Do not make any modifications to the electrical system, e.g. changes of electronic control units (chip tuning).

Caution

Never modify your vehicle. It may affect the performance, durability and safety of the vehicle and the warranty may not cover any problems caused by the modification.

Lifting the Vehicle

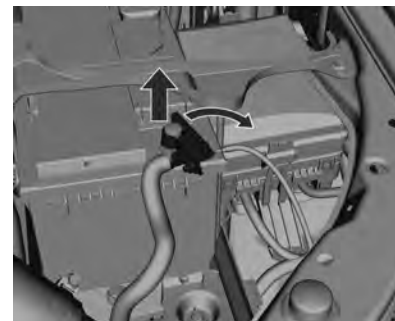


The illustration shows where the supports of a hoist or jack must be placed.

Caution

To avoid vehicle damage, always use a rubber pads on support points of elevator or jack.

Battery Disconnect Switch



Disconnect

1. Open the hood.
2. Certify all electric systems are turned off, like audio systems, headlights, anti-theft alarm and accessories. Beware the

254 Vehicle Care

ignition is switched off and remove the vehicle key from the ignition.

3. Close all vehicle doors and do not activate anti-theft alarm.
4. Unscrew the nut of the negative terminal end.
5. Remove the negative terminal end from battery terminal.

Connect

1. Assure the ignition is switched off and vehicle key is out of the ignition.

Open the bonnet and install the terminal end in the negative battery terminal.

2. Tighten the nut of the terminal end.
3. Close the hood.

Vehicle Storage

Storage for a Long Period of Time

If the vehicle is going to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve rubber seals.
- Change engine oil.
- Drain washer fluid reservoir.
- Check coolant anti-freeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust the tire pressure to the specified value for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set the selector lever to **P**, preventing the rolling of the vehicle.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Disconnect the battery according to the procedure described in *Battery Disconnect Switch* ⇨ 253.

- Close the hood.

Putting back into Operation

When the vehicle is going to be put back into operation:

- Connect the battery according to the procedure described in *Battery Disconnect Switch* ⇨ 253.
- Check tire pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work



Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.

The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

Danger

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

Hood Opening



Pull the release lever.



Push the safety catch to the left and open the hood.

Warning

When the engine is hot, ensure that you only touch the foam padding of the hood support rod to avoid burning.

See *Air Intake* ⇨ 201

256 Vehicle Care



Secure the hood support.

Closing

To close the hood:

1. Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are closed properly. Then, lift the hood to relieve pressure on the hood prop. Remove the hood prop from the slot on the underside of the hood and return the prop to its retainer.

The prop rod must click into place when returning it to the retainer to prevent hood damage.

2. Lower the hood 30 cm above the vehicle and release it so it fully latches. Check to make sure the hood is closed and repeat the process if necessary.

Warning

Always observe the following precautions:

- Pull on the front edge of the hood to make sure it is latched securely before you drive your vehicle.
- Do not pull the hood release handle while your vehicle is moving.
- Do not move your vehicle with the hood open. An open hood will obscure the driver's vision.
- Operating your vehicle with the hood open can lead to a collision resulting in damage

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

to your vehicle, other property, personal injury or even death.

- Do not close the hood with the rod engaged on the hood.

Engine Compartment Overview



DURAMAX Diesel Engine

258 Vehicle Care

1. *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 259
2. *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 263
3. *Power Steering Fluid (If equipped)* ⇨ 262.
4. *Engine Oil* ⇨ 258
5. *Engine Oil Dipstick. See Engine Oil* ⇨ 258
6. *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 263
7. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ 273
8. *Battery* ⇨ 264
9. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ 259

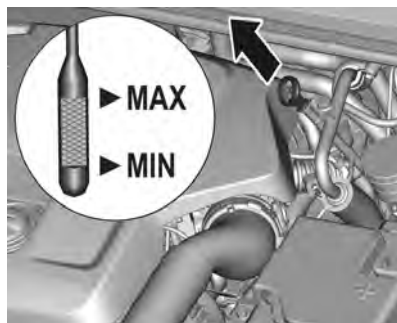
Engine Oil

It is recommended to check the oil level every 650km. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 304.

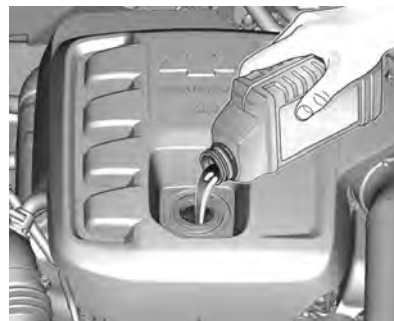
The oil level can be checked at operating temperature and after the engine has been turned off for 10 minutes or more. For cold engine situation the engine must be utilized

for at least 1 hour to reach operating temperature and then turned off for 10 minutes or more.

Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, insert it to the stop on the handle and make half turn, pull out and read the engine oil level.



When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, add enough engine oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range.



Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 304.

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ 325.

Warning

Engine oil is an irritant and, if ingested, can cause illness or death.

Keep out of reach of children.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

Be very careful when draining the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you!

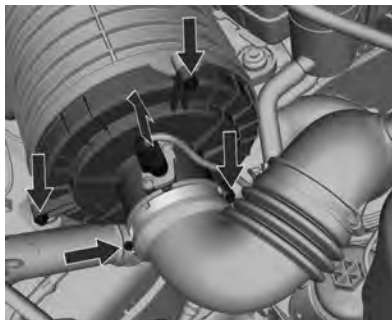
Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



To replace the engine air filter, release the clamp and remove the air cleaner outlet duct. Disconnect the air sensor, unscrew the 3 screws and remove the filter housing.

To inspect the air cleaner, remove the element from the air filter housing and lightly shake it to release loose dust and dirt.

Engine Coolant

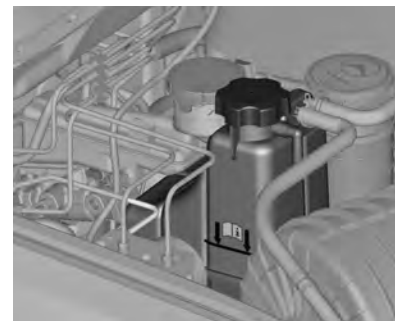
Cooling Liquid Change

The engine cooling system is filled with a long-life additive (ethylene glycol), whose properties provide a proper protection against freezing, boiling and corrosion.

Coolant Level

Caution

A low coolant level can cause engine damage.



260 Vehicle Care

If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be about 2,5 cm above the filling line mark. Top up if the level is low.

Fill with a mixture of distilled water and anti-freeze approved for the vehicle. Install the cap tightly. Have the antifreeze concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss repaired by a Chevrolet dealer.

Warning

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

Engine Overheating

The coolant temperature indicator message is displayed in the instrument panel. This message indicates the engine temperature increasing.

Note

If the engine operates without coolant, your vehicle may be seriously damaged. In this case, the repairs will not be covered by warranty.

Engine Overheating without Steam

If you note the overheating advise and there are no signs of steam, the problem may not be that serious. The engine may overheat when:

- The vehicle is driven in abrupt climb at high ambient temperatures.
- The vehicle is stopped after driving at high speeds.
- The vehicle has to be driven with the engine operating at idle speed for a long time.

If the overheating warning remains and still no steam is visible, observe the following procedure for approximately 1 minute:

1. Switch off the air conditioning system (if equipped)

2. Try to keep the engine running (use a gear in which the engine rotates slowly).

If the warning of overheating disappears, you can continue driving. For safety reasons, drive slowly for approximately 10 minutes.

If the temperature gauge indicator drops to normal position, continue driving.

If the coolant temperature does not drop, turn off the engine and park the vehicle immediately.

If no steam is visible, switch on the engine at idle speed for approximately 2 or 3 minutes with the vehicle stopped and observe if the overheating warning lights go off.

If the overheating warning still appears, switch off the engine, ask the passengers to leave the vehicle and wait for it to cool down. Look for technical assistance immediately.

Caution

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything and wait for it to cool down.

The coolant level should be at the specified level. If the level falls down, it means that there might be a possibility of leaks in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator or water pump.

Caution

- The heater hoses and radiator hoses as well as other engine parts may be hot. Do not touch them, otherwise, you may be burned.
 - If there is any leak, the engine must not be switched on, otherwise, all coolant may be lost, causing
- (Continued)

Caution (Continued)

burns. Before driving the vehicle, have the leaks repaired.

Overheating with Steam

Caution

- The steam generated by engine overheating can cause serious burns, even if you open the engine compartment just a little bit. Keep yourself away from the engine when observing steam emission. Switch off the engine, ask the passengers to leave the vehicle and wait for it to cool down. Before opening the engine compartment, wait until the coolant steam signals are extinguished.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- If the vehicle continues in movement while the engine is overheated, the liquids can escape due to the high pressure. You and other persons may be seriously burned. Switch off the overheated engine, leave the vehicle and wait for it to cool down.

Engine Fan

If there is no leak visible, check for engine fan operation. Your vehicle is equipped with engine driven fan. If the fan does not actuate, repairs are necessary. Switch off the engine. If the problem is not identified but the coolant level is not at maximum, add to the surge tank a mixture of potable water and additive for radiator (long duration – orange color) ACDelco (50% ratio of additive). Switch on the engine when the coolant level is at

262 Vehicle Care

maximum. If the overheating warning signal is on, consult a Chevrolet dealer.

Caution

The fans and other engine movable parts may cause severe wounds. Keep your hands and pieces of cloth far from movable parts while the engine is operating.

Caution

- The boiling scalding liquids and the vapors that pass through the cooling system can explode and cause serious burns. These are under pressure, so if the surge tank cap is open even partially, the vapors may be expelled at high speed. Never turn the surge tank cap while the engine and
- (Continued)

Caution (Continued)

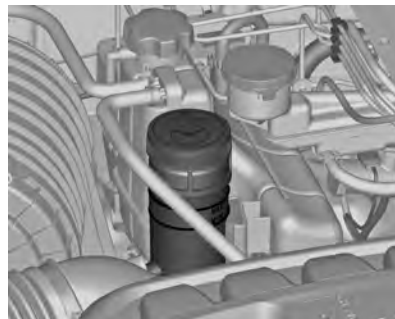
the cooling system are hot. If it is necessary, turn the surge tank cap and wait the engine to cool down.

- The long life additive for the cooling system is poisonous and must be carefully handled.

Note

When the engine is off for long periods and mostly when the weather is cold, the fan may turn on for some seconds after the start of the engine. This is not a problem, the fan will turn off normally after some seconds and operate when necessary.

Power Steering Fluid (If equipped)



The power steering fluid level must be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

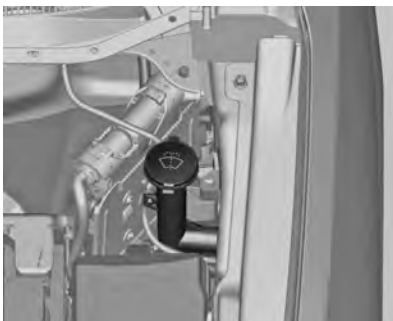
If the fluid level is too low or too high, seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Caution

Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly.

Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap/dipstick or to enter the reservoir.

Washer Fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of windscreen wash fluid.

To refill the windscreen washer fluid reservoir:

- Use only commercially available ready-to-use washer fluid for that purpose.
- Do not use tap water. Minerals present in tap water may plug the windscreen washer lines.
- If air temperature is likely to go below freezing, use windshield washer fluid which has sufficient antifreezing property.

Brakes

In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

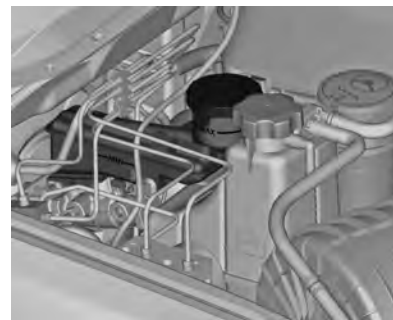
Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

Brake Fluid

Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

When filling, ensure maximum cleanliness as contamination of the brake fluid can lead to brake system

264 Vehicle Care

malfunctions. Have the cause of the loss of brake fluid rectified by a Chevrolet dealer.

Only use high-performance brake fluid approved for the vehicle, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 304.

Battery

The vehicle battery is maintenance free, provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short distance driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than 4 weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the battery according to the procedure described in *Battery Disconnect Switch* ⇨ 253, thus avoiding its discharging.

Warning

Keep glowing materials away from the battery to avoid explosion. Battery explosion can result in damage to the vehicle and serious injury or death.

Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulfuric acid, which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact. In case of skin contact, clean the area with water and immediately seek medical help.

Keep out of reach of children.

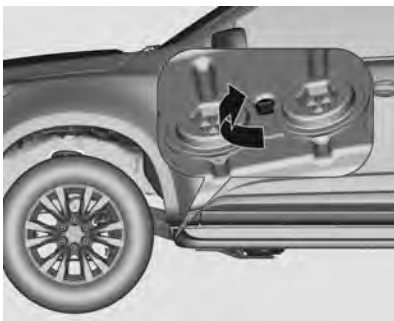
Do not tilt an open battery.

See *Battery Power Protection* ⇨ 97.

Diesel Fuel Filter

Drain diesel fuel filter of residual water when the message "Water in Fuel – Contact Service" is displayed on Driver Information Center or at every engine oil change, as follows:

- Turn off the engine.
- Place a container underneath the filter housing.
- Remove the drain plug located on the bottom of the filter housing by turning it counterclockwise to drain off the water. The filter is drained as soon as diesel fuel emerges from the port.
- Reinstall the plug by turning it clockwise and make sure there is no leakage.
- Turn ignition key to ON, wait for 5 seconds then turn key to LOCK or OFF.



Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled on ground level after fuelling at least 15 liters. Switch on the ignition three times for 30 seconds at a time. Then start the engine for a maximum of 30 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than 5 seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer.

Wiper Blade Replacement

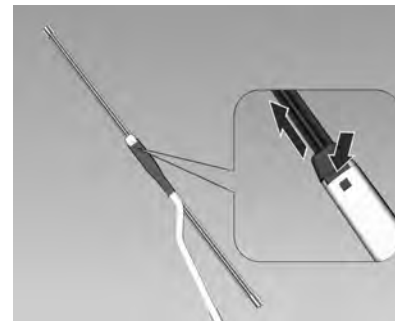
Properly functioning windscreen wipers are essential for clear vision and safe driving. Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades. Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windscreen.

Foreign material on the windscreen or wiper blades can reduce the effectiveness of the wipers. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the windscreen and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent. Rinse them thoroughly with water.

Repeat the process if necessary. There is no way to remove traces of silicone from glass. Therefore, never apply polish with silicone to your vehicle windscreen or you will get streaks which will impair the driver's vision.

Do not use solvents, petrol, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean wipers. These are harsh and can damage the blades and painted surfaces.

Front Wiper Blade



1. Hold wiper arm rod and lift up wiper arm.
2. Press the upper button shown in the image and push the wiper blade.

266 Vehicle Care

Bulb Replacement

Turn the ignition and the relevant switch off.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Application	Power (W)
Passenger Compartment	10
Reading (Front) (if equipped)	5
Glove Box (if equipped)	LED
High Beam	55
Low Beam	55
Fog Lamp (if equipped)	55
Brake / Light (Tail) – Brake	LED and/ or 21

Application	Power (W)
Brake / Light (Tail) - Parking	LED and/ or 5
Brake light	LED
Headlight	LED and/ or 5
DRL (if equipped)	LED
Rear Fog Lamp (if equipped)	21
License	5
Reverse Light	21
Turn Signal Light	21
Rear View Mirror Turn Signal Light (if equipped)	LED

Note

After driving in heavy rain or washing, headlight and taillight lenses could appear frosty.

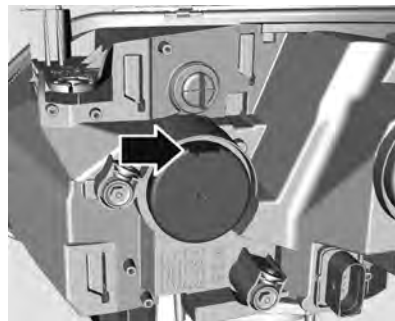
This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside.

This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and does not indicate a problem with your vehicle.

If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, have the vehicle checked by a Chevrolet dealer.

Headlamps

Position Lamp

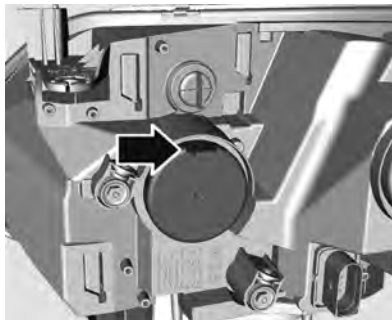


1. Remove the protective cover.



2. Pull the bulb socket and disengage it.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket.
4. Insert the new bulb.
5. Insert the socket in the reflector.
6. Push the bulb socket and engage it.
7. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

High Beam



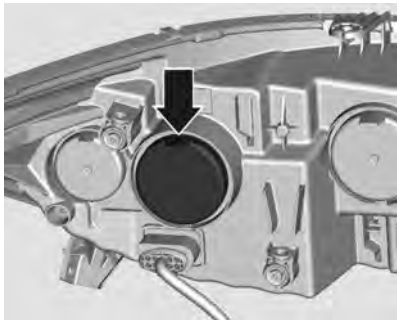
1. Remove the protective cover.



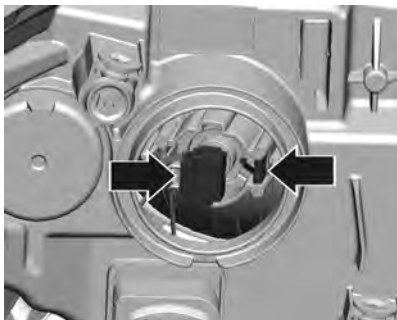
2. Unplug the connector from bulb.
3. Press the spring clip outward and disengage it.
4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
5. When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector.
6. Engage the spring clip.
7. Plug the connector onto bulb.
8. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

268 Vehicle Care

Low Beam



1. Remove the protective cover.



2. Unplug the connector from bulb.
3. Press the spring clip and disengage the bulb.
4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
5. When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector and press the bulb into position.
6. Plug the connector onto bulb.
7. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

Headlight Aim

Caution

If the headlights need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that the vehicle is taken to a Chevrolet dealer for service, because it is related with safety.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) (If equipped)

If a failure with LED lights occurs, have DRL replaced by a Chevrolet Dealership or Authorized Repair Shop.

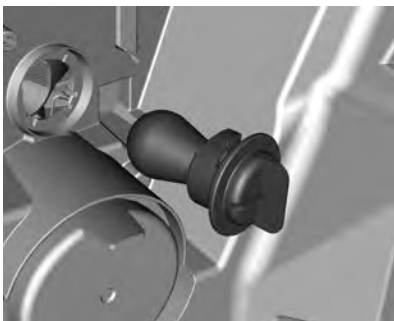
Fog Lamps

Have bulbs replaced by a Chevrolet Dealership or Authorized Repair Shop.

Front Turn Signal Lamps



1. Rotate bulb holder counterclockwise and disengage.



2. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate counterclockwise and remove the bulb.
3. Insert the new bulb holder in the reflector and rotate clockwise to engage.

Turn Signal Lights on the Exterior Mirrors

Have the turn signal lights replaced by a Chevrolet dealer.

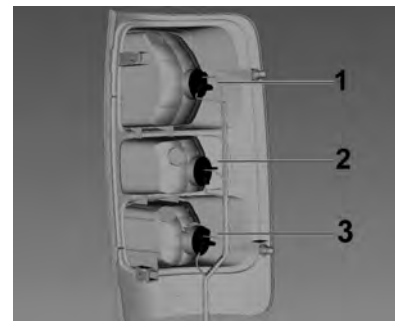
Taillamps



1. Unscrew both fasteners.

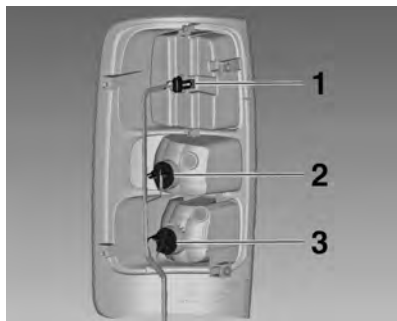


2. Remove the tail light assembly by pulling straight out of the body. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.



3. Tail light/brake light (1)
Turn signal light (2)
Reverse light or Rear Fog light (3)

270 Vehicle Care



For LED version just replace lights 2 and 3. The brake light should be replaced by a Chevrolet dealer.



4. Rotate the relevant bulb holder counterclockwise.

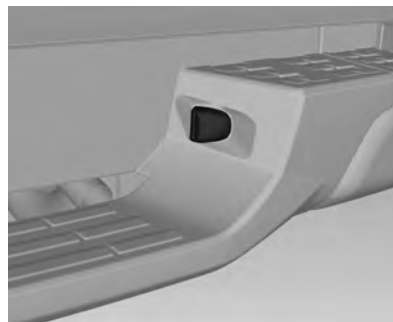


5. Remove bulb holder. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate counterclockwise and remove the bulb.
6. Insert the bulb holder into the tail light assembly and fasten into place. Install tail light assembly in body and tighten the fasteners. Close the covers and engage.
7. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

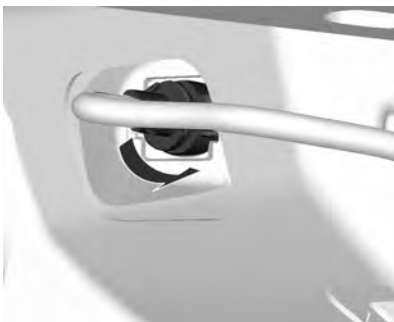
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)

The center high-mounted stoplamp should be replaced by a Chevrolet dealer.

License Plate Lamp



1. The number plate light is located on the rear bumper.



2. On the back side of the bumper, rotate the bulb holder counterclockwise to disengage.
3. Remove bulb from the holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder in bulb housing and rotate clockwise.

Interior Lamps

Courtesy Light, Reading Lights

Have bulbs replaced by a Chevrolet dealer.

Instrument Panel Illumination

Have LEDs replaced by a Chevrolet dealer.

Electrical System

Fuses

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

There are two fuse boxes in the vehicle:

- In the front left of the engine compartment.
- In the interior compartment, behind the storage compartment.

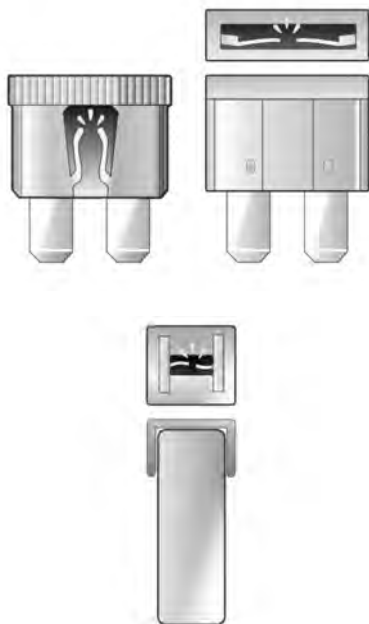
There is a primary fuse holder connected to the positive battery post. If necessary have them changed by a Chevrolet dealer.

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognized by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

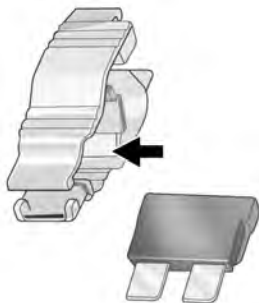
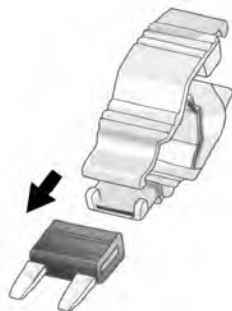
Some functions are protected by several fuses.

272 Vehicle Care



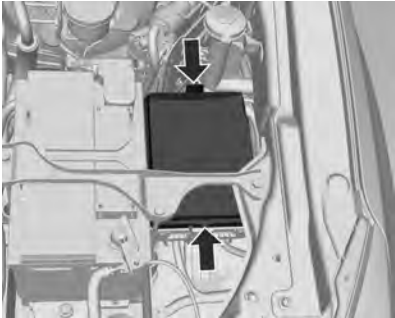
Fuse Extractor

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.



Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw the fuse.

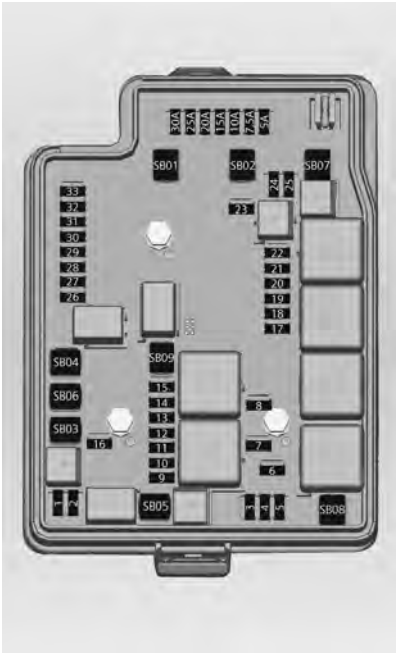
Engine Compartment
Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover, lift it upward and remove it.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	10A – Compressor A/C Clutch
2	—
3	15A - Electric Power Steering (EPS) (if available)
4	—
5	15A – Horn
6	15A – Front Fog Lamp (if available)
7	10A – High Beam LH
8	10A – High Beam RH
9	7.5A - Engine Control Module - (Diesel)
10	15A – Powertrain Relay (3) – (Diesel)
11	20A – Engine Control Module (1) (Diesel)
12	10A – Powertrain Relay (1)

274 Vehicle Care

Mini Fuses	Usage
13	10A – Powertrain Relay (2)
14	15A – Powertrain Relay (4)
15	15A – Run Crank Relay Signal
16	15A – Automatic Transmission Control Module (if available)
17	10A – Transfer Case Module and Head Lamp Leveling (if available)
18	10A – Power Supply Cluster - A/C - Airbag Module
19	20A – Fuel Pump (Diesel)
20	Not Used
21	30A – Rear Defogger (if available)

Mini Fuses	Usage
22	15A - Outside Rear View Mirror Defogger (if available)
23	15A - Cab Heater (Diesel)
24	—
25	10A - Front Washer Pump
26	10A - Park Assist (if available)
27	5A – Body Control Module
28	Not Used
29	30A – ABS or ESC Module (if available)
30	10A – Horn
31	15A – Body Control Module
32	15A – Engine Control Module (Battery) (Diesel)

Mini Fuses	Usage
33	10A – Communication Wire Between Modules

JCase Fuses	Usage
SB01	50A – ABS or ESC Module Pump (if available)
SB02	30A – Transfer Case Control Module (4X4) (if available)
	30A -Spare (4x2)
SB03	60A – Preheating Glow Plug Module (Diesel)
SB04	—
SB05	30A – Starter Motor Solenoid
SB06	30A – Front Wiper
SB07	30A – Fuel Heater (Diesel)

Vehicle Care 275

JCase Fuses	Usage
SB08	Not Used (Diesel)
SB09	—

Maxi	Usage
F34	30A – Trailer Hitch Module (if available)

Relays	Usage
RLY01	Starter
RLY03	High Beam
RLY05	Viscous Heater (Diesel)
RLY08	Front Wiper Control
RLY09	Front Wiper Speed
RLY10	Rear Defogger and Outside Rear View Mirror Defogger (if available)
RLY11	Powertrain
RLY12	A/C Clutch
RLY13	Fuel Heater (Diesel)

Relays	Usage
RLY14	Not Used (Diesel)
RLY15	Not Used
RLY18	Run Crank
RLY19	Fuel Pump (Diesel)

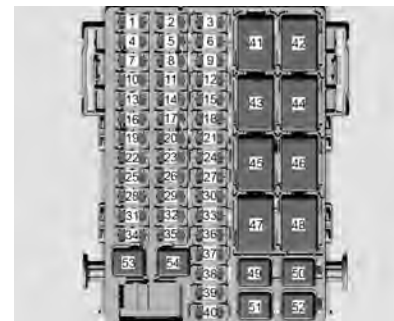
Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The fuse box is behind the instrument panel cap.



Remove the instrument panel cap in the direction of the arrow.

Reinstall the cap in reverse order.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	20A – Body Control Module (6)
3	20A – Cigarette Lighter (if available)
6	20A – Front and Rear Power Outlets (if available)

276 Vehicle Care

Mini Fuses	Usage
7	30A – Body Control Module (8)
10	20A – Radio (if available)
11	2A – Ignition Switch
12	15A - Side Blind Zone (SBZ) (If available)
13	15A - Body Control Module (3)
14	10A – Front HVAC Control Module
15	15A – Seat Heated (If available)
16	15A – Body Control Module (1)
17	30A – Front Door Power Window Switch
19	30A – Rear Door Power Window Switch (if available)

Mini Fuses	Usage
20	15A – Body Control Module (4)
21	10A – Spare
22	30A – Power Seat (if available)
25	10A – Sensing and Diagnose Module (SDM)
26	15A – Body Control Module (2)
27	2A – Clock Spring
28	7.5A – Data Link Connector (DLC)
31	10A – Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC), Displays - Radio (Center Stack), USB
33	10A – Central Gateway Module (CGM) - Cyber Security

Mini Fuses	Usage
34	30A – Front HVAC Blower
37	10A – Front Collision Alert (FCA) / Rain Sensor (if available)
39	10A – Rear View Mirrors (if available)

JCase Fuses	Usage
53	40A – BUS-C (fuses: F12, F33, F37, F39, F40)
54	40A – Accessory (12V)

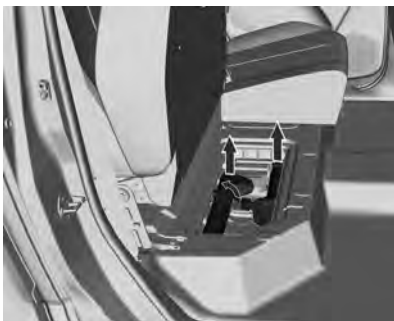
Relays	Usage
RLY45	C-Enable
RLY46	RAP and Accessory (12V)
RLY48	Run relay

Vehicle Tools

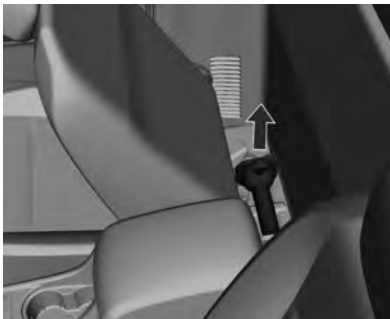
Tools

Vehicles with Spare Wheel

The jack and the tools are located behind the passenger front seat for the regular cab and under the back seat for the crew cab.

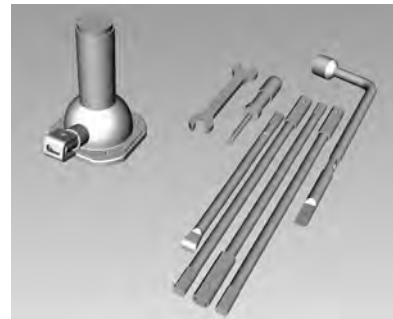


Tools jack location in the crew cab.



Tools jack location in the regular cab.

Unhook the strap from the seat and fit it on the head restraint rod. To release the jack, retreat the rod by turning the connection counterclockwise.



The tool kit consists of the following items:

- Four Jack Handle Extensions
 - Jack
 - Wheel Wrench
 - Screwdriver
 - 1 Wrench
1. Use the screwdriver to assemble the wheel wrench, the jack handle extensions, and the jack handle.

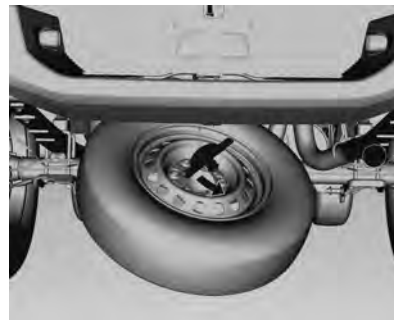
278 Vehicle Care



2. Remove the cover to Insert the chiseled end of the jack handle at a slight angle through the central hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide.



3. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.



4. Tilt the retainer when the tire has been lowered, and slide it up the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.

5. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

Wheels and Tires

Tire Condition, Wheel Condition

Driving over sharp edges can cause tire and wheel damage. Do not trap tires on the curb while parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a Chevrolet dealer in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Tire Designations

E.g. **245/70 R16 111 S**

245 : Tyre width, mm

70 : Cross-section ratio (tire height to tyre width), percent

R : Belt type: Radial

RF : Type: RunFlat

16 : Wheel diameter, inches

111 : Load index

S : Speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q : up to 160 km/h

S : up to 180 km/h

T : up to 190 km/h

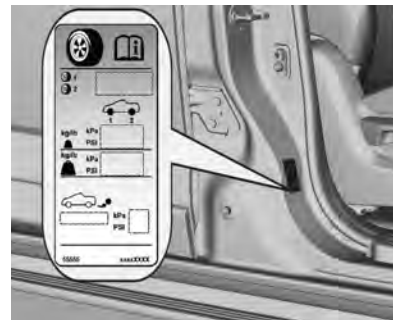
H : up to 210 km/h

V : up to 240 km/h

W : up to 270 km/h

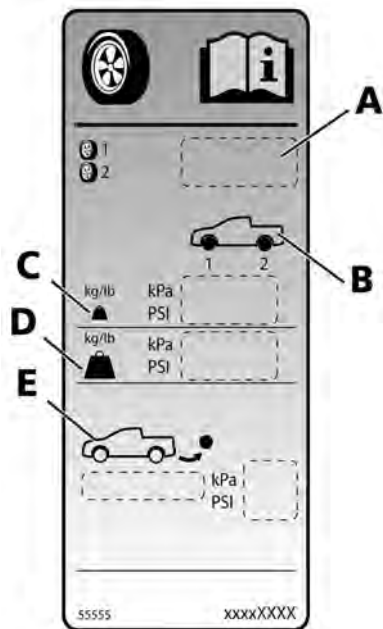
Tire Pressure

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Also check the spare wheel.



See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 326 and on the label on the front right door frame.

280 Vehicle Care



- A. Tire Specifications
- B. Tire Positions
- C. Normal Load Condition (up to 3 people)

D. Full Load Condition + load

E. Spare Tire Information

The tire pressure data refers to cold tires.

Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.

Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.

Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

Caution

Modifications made to the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorized service facility may void authorization to use the system.

Maintaining manufacturer's recommended tire pressure is part of best practices to optimize the fuel consumption of the vehicle.

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

The tire pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four wheels once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

Caution

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure light.

All wheels must be equipped with pressure sensors and the tires must have the prescribed pressure.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold. If required, the tires should be inflated to the pressure specified on the tire placard. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the tire placard, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, the TPMS illuminates a low tire pressure light when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure light illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Caution

Tire sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using tire sealants is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the

system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure light. When the system detects a malfunction, the light will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction light after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ 282.

282 Vehicle Care

Tire Learn (If equipped)

The sensors are calibrated to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool. See your dealer for service.

Vehicle Loading

Select SET/CLR to define one of following options:

Light : for comfort pressure up to 3 people.

ECO : for ECO pressure up to 3 people.

Max : for full loading.

The ECO tire pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.

The tire pressure tables show all possible tire combinations. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 326.

If the tire pressure shall be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tire pressure monitoring system, switch

off ignition. After adjusting tire pressure switch on ignition and select the according setting as shown previously in this section.

After inflating driving may be required to update the tire pressure values in the DIC. During this time (!) may light up.

Caution

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure light.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel

assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Wheels and Tires* ⇨ 279.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the

tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ 81.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and must be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ 326, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Wheels and Tires* ⇨ 279.

The TPMS can warn about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Wheels and Tires* ⇨ 279 and *Tire Rotation* ⇨ 285.

Caution

Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem

is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor calibration process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor calibration process. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and

284 Vehicle Care

the sensor calibration process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.

- Replacement tires or wheels do not match the original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ 285.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

TPMS Sensor Calibration Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the tires or replacing one or more of the

TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor calibration process should also be performed after replacing a spare tire with a road tire containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

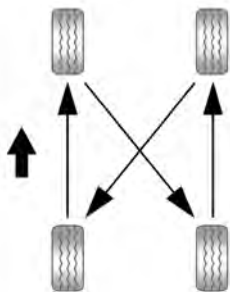
Tires should be replaced at a tread depth of 1.6 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

Tires age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every 6 years.

Tire Rotation



Different forces in front and rear tires make them wear differently, depending on several factors, such as road surface, the way of driving, suspension alignment, wheel balancing, tires pressure, etc.

The owner must carry out an evaluation of the vehicle wear, and this includes regular tire rotation, which should not exceed 10,000 km. tire rotation is vital to achieving even tread wear and long tire life.

The tire rotation must be performed as indicated in the illustration.

The tire condition is an item that is checked during a periodic inspection at a Chevrolet dealer of your preference, which can diagnose signs of uneven wear that may compromise your car safety and performance.

Never include a temporary spare tire in the tire rotation due to size differences.

Caution

- Due to ageing, the tire rubber gets deteriorated. This is also valid for the spare tire even if it was not used.
- Tire ageing depends on many conditions of use, including temperature, load conditions and also tire inflation pressure.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- To evaluate the use conditions, the tires should be taken regularly to the manufacturer's technical assistance.
- A spare tire which was not used within a 6-year period should be used in emergencies only. If you need to use this tire, drive at low speeds.

When It Is Time for New Tires

The tire must be replaced when cuts, bulges on sidewalls or any other deformation type are present.

286 Vehicle Care



Tires must also be replaced when their tread depth has worn down near to 3 mm. The image shows where the tread depth can be found.

Caution

- The tread depth must be greater than 1.6 mm. This information can be found on tire "shoulder", after the TWI (Tread Wear Indicators) abbreviation.
- The risk of hydroplaning and drifting is greater when the tires are worn.

Note

When replacing, always use tires of the same brand and dimensions. Preferably replace all tires of same axle at the same time.

Different Tire and Wheel Types

If tires of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogram the speedometer as well as the nominal tire pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tire size, have the label with tire pressures replaced.

Warning

Use of unsuitable tires or wheels may lead to accidents and will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Warning

Do not use different size and type of tires and wheels from those originally installed on the vehicle. It can affect safety and performance of the vehicle. It could lead to handling failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing tires, be sure to install all four tires and wheels of the same size, type, tread, brand and loadcarrying capacity. The use of any other tire size or type may seriously affect ride, handling, ground and body clearance, stopping distance and speedometer reliability.

Wheel Covers

Wheel covers and tires that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tire combination requirements must be used.

Vehicle Care 287

If the wheel covers and tires used are not factory approved, the tires must not have a rim protection ridge.

Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

Warning

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and, thereby accidents.

Wheel Replacement

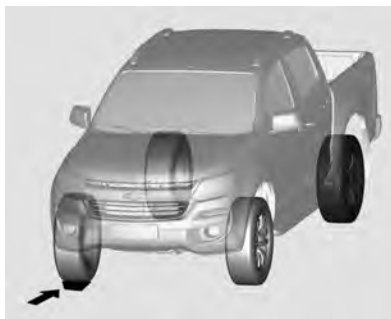
Note

If equipped with Tire Pressure Monitor System, when replacing the wheel, the system will not function normally until the wheel is repaired or the damaged wheel pressure sensor is placed in a another wheel and the system learning is done. See a dealer for system learning procedure.

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface and in a safe location.

Press the  button.



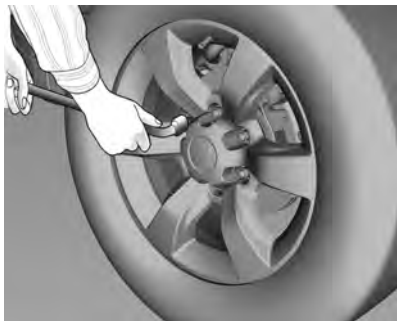
Flat	Wedge Placement	Location on Vehicle
Front	Left Side	Behind the back right tire
	Right Side	Behind the back left tire

Flat	Wedge Placement	Location on Vehicle
Back	Left Side	In front of the front right tire
	Right Side	In front of the front left tire

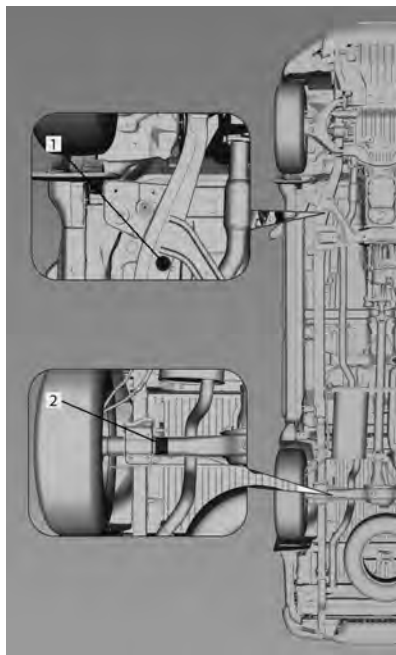
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P** (PARK).
- Remove the spare wheel, see "Spare Wheel" in this section.
- Never change more than one wheel a time.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tire change.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.

288 Vehicle Care

- Clean wheel nuts and thread before mounting the wheel.



1. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.



Position the jack on the front ends on the plate 1.

Position the jack on the rear end under the rear axle housing 2 .

Danger

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

2. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned with the vehicle jacking points.

Warning

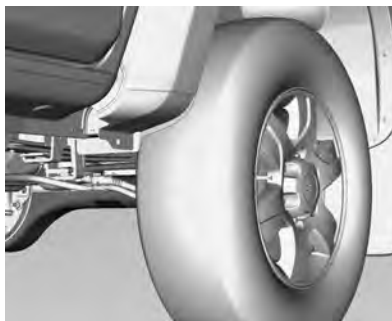
Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

Front Position

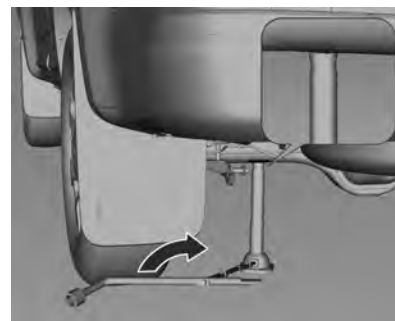


If the flat tire is on the front of the vehicle, position the jack to the rear of the front tire in the pocket off of the frame.

Rear Position



If the flat tire is on the rear, position the jack under the rear axle and get as close as possible to the shock absorber.



290 Vehicle Care

3. When positioning the jack under the rear axle housing, certify that the slot on the upper side of the jack fits on the carcass.

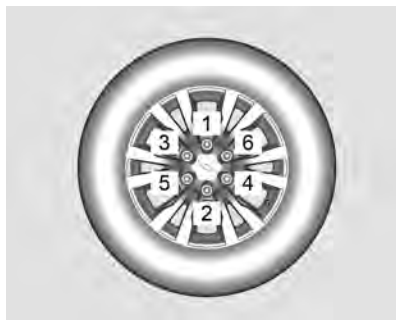
Attach jack handle and, with the jack correctly aligned, rotate the handle until the wheel is cleared of the ground slightly.

4. Remove the wheel nuts.
5. Remove the flat wheel.
6. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel nuts and studs, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.
7. Install the spare wheel.

Danger

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash with the risk of death.

8. Reinstall the wheel nuts by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
9. Lower the vehicle completely by turning the jack lever counterclockwise.



10. Tighten the nuts in a crosswise (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) sequence.

For tightening torque, see *Capacities and Specifications*
⇨ 325.

11. Stow the replaced wheel and the vehicle tools, see *Tools*
⇨ 277.

12. Check the tire pressure of the installed tire and also the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Have the defective tire renewed or repaired.

Spare Wheel

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations.

The spare wheel has a steel rim.

Use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or together with winter tires could affect driveability. Have the defective tire replaced as soon as possible.

The spare wheel is kept beneath the rear of the vehicle.

1. Insert the chiseled end of the jack handle at a slight angle through the central hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide.

2. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.
3. Tilt the retainer when the tire has been lowered and slide it up the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.

Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

Warning

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Warning

Failure to follow these tire storage instructions carefully could result in personal injury or property damage if the hoist cable fails or if the tire comes loose. Make sure the tire is stored securely before driving.

Caution

Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up can damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tire repaired as soon as possible.

Caution

The tire hoist can be damaged if there is no tension on the cable when using it. To have the necessary tension, the spare or road tire and wheel assembly must be installed on the tire hoist to use it.

Warning

An improperly stored spare tire could come loose and cause a crash. To avoid personal injury or property damage, always store the spare tire when the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier.

1. Put the tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle.

292 Vehicle Care

2. Pull the cable and spring (or chain) through the center of the wheel. Tilt the wheel retainer plate down and through the center of the wheel.

Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.

3. Use the screwdriver to assemble the wheel wrench, the jack extensions, and the jack handle.

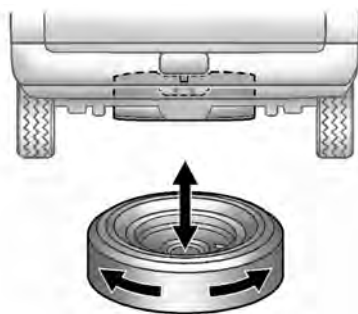
Caution

Use of an air wrench or other power tools with the hoist mechanism is not recommended and could damage the system. Use only the tools supplied with the hoist mechanism.

4. For pickup truck, remove the cover to insert the chiseled end of the jack handle at a slight angle through the central hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide. For SUV,

insert the chiseled end of the jack handle through the hole and into the slot. See *Tools* ⇨ 277.

5. Raise the tire part way upward. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening.
6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it tight under the vehicle. You cannot overtighten the cable or chain.



7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to turn the tire. If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable or chain.

Repeat this tightness check procedure when checking the spare tire pressure according to the scheduled maintenance information or any time the spare tire is handled due to service of other components.

8. Reinstall the spare tire lock, if the vehicle has one.

To store the jack and tools, reverse the steps for removing them.

Jump Starting

To switch the ignition on in a vehicle with discharged battery, connect the jump leads in the battery from other vehicle. This should be done with extreme caution and following the next instructions.

Warning

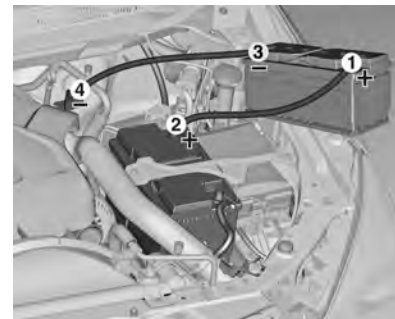
Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

Warning

Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics, and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the battery to open flames or sparks.
- A discharged battery can freeze at a temperature of 0°C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump cables.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a battery.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (11,0 to 15,5 Volts). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged battery.
- Use jump cables with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm² (25 mm² for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the battery during jump starting.

- Do not allow the terminals of one cable to touch those of the other cable.
- Do not use chargers for quick charging in this procedure.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, manual transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P (PARK)**.



Cables connection order:

294 Vehicle Care

1. Connect the red cable to the positive terminal of the booster battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
3. Connect the black cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black cable to a vehicle grounding point, such as the engine block or an engine mounting bolt. Connect as far away from the discharged battery as possible.

Caution

The fans and the other engine movable parts can cause serious injuries. Keep the hands and pieces of cloth away from the movable parts when the engine is running, or even with the engine switched on.

Route the cables so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

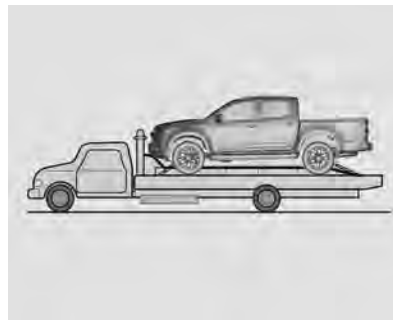
To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After 5 minutes, start the other engine. If the engine does not start after some attempts, there is the possibility that some repairs might be necessary.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approximately 3 minutes with the cables connected.
4. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing cables.

Towing the Vehicle

Note

To avoid damage, the disabled vehicle should be towed with all four wheels off the ground. Care must be taken with vehicles that have low ground clearance and/or special equipment. Always have the vehicle towed with a flatbed vehicle carrier.



Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

Please observe the following procedures when towing a vehicle:

- No passenger should remain in the vehicle being towed.
- Release the parking brake of the towed vehicle and place the transmission gear in neutral.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.
- Two-wheel drive vehicles should not be towed with the rear wheels on the ground. Two-wheel drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motor home, see "Recreational Vehicle Towing" in this section.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle - such as behind a motor home. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the

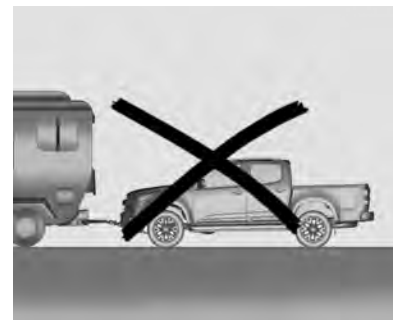
vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be traveled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as in preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

Dinghy Towing

Two-Wheel Drive Vehicles

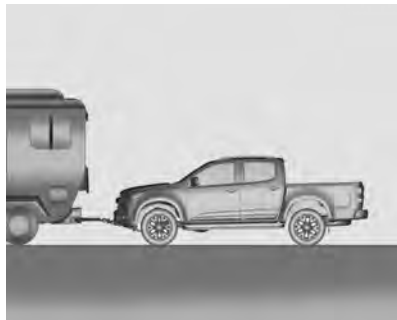


Note

If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drive train components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.

296 Vehicle Care

Vehicles Four by Four



Use the following procedure to dinghy tow a four-wheel drive vehicle:

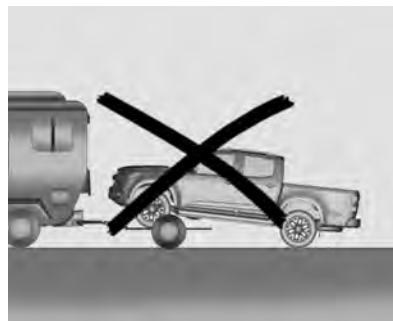
1. Position the vehicle being towed behind the tow vehicle.
2. Put an automatic transmission in **P** (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).
3. Turn the engine off and firmly set the parking brake.
4. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the tow vehicle.
5. Shift the transfer case to **N** (Neutral).

6. Turn the ignition to **LOCK/OFF** and remove the key—the front wheels will still turn. To remove the key and release the lever, see “Release Selector Lever” under *Interruption of Power Supply* ⇨ 220.
7. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.

If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

Dolly Towing

Front Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground) – Two-wheel Drive Vehicles



Note

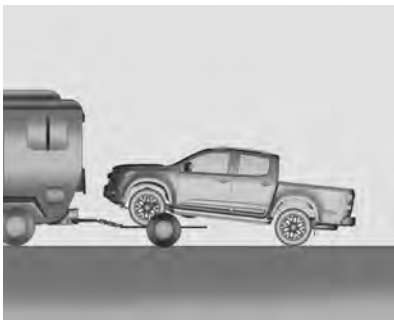
If a two-wheel drive vehicle is towed with the rear wheels on the ground, the transmission could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground.

Two-wheel drive vehicles should not be towed with all four wheels on the ground. Two-wheel drive

transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

To dolly tow a two-wheel drive vehicle, the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels on the dolly. See "Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)" later in this section for more information.

Front Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground) – Four-wheel Drive Vehicles

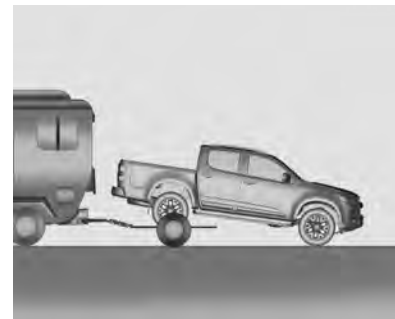


Use the following procedure to dolly tow a four-wheel drive vehicle from the front:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the front wheels onto the dolly.
3. Put an automatic transmission in **P** (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).
4. Turn the engine off and firmly set the parking brake.
5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Shift the transfer case to **N** (Neutral).
7. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.
8. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF after towing.

If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground) – Vehicles Four by Two



Use the following procedure to dolly tow a two-wheel drive vehicle from the rear.

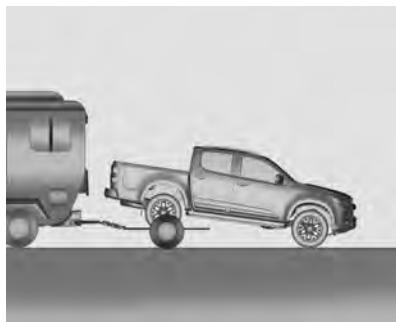
1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake.
4. Put an automatic transmission in **P** (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).

298 Vehicle Care

5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground) – Four-wheel Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dolly tow a four-wheel drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake.
4. Put an automatic transmission in **P** (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).

5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.
7. Shift the transfer case to **N** (Neutral).
8. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF after towing.

If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

Emergency Towing



Note

This operation must only be used in cases of emergency.

The towing eye is located at the front of the vehicle under the bumper.

The driver should be inside the vehicle to steer and apply the brakes.

Turn on ignition to release steering column lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windshield wipers.

Transmission in neutral.

Caution

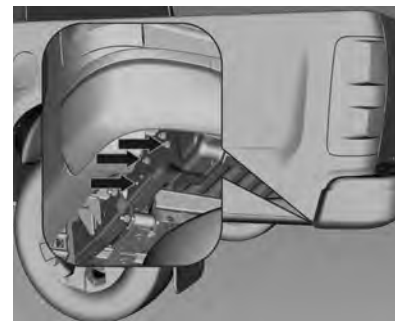
Drive slowly and smoothly. Quick starts and stops can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust fumes from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Towing Another Vehicle

Towing Hitch Installation Dimensions



Rear Tow Coupling Information

The attachment points of the rear tow coupling is located in indicated area, as the image above shows.

300 Vehicle Care

Caution

- A bad electrical component connection (wiring, sockets, connectors, etc) may cause damage to the vehicle and to the rear tow coupling.
- Never leave the tow coupling engaged with the vehicle while the engine is turned off. This may cause the discharge of the battery.
- Do not exceed the load limit of the tow coupling.

Note

- Always follow the installation instructions of the rear tow coupling manufacturer.
- If the vehicle is equipped with parking sensors, the owner must reset (see parking sensor manufacturer's manual) the system before installing the rear tow coupling.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a Chevrolet dealer.

Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental conditions. Wash and wax your vehicle regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a program that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen, etc. can cause paint damage and should be cleaned off immediately.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions.

Never use an automatic vehicle wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water).

The wipers must be switched off. Remove the antenna and external accessories.

Never use the automatic vehicle wash when the vehicle is unlocked, the fuel filter door might be opened and damage by the automatic vehicle wash.

Make sure to lock the fuel filler door by pushing the central locking button.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Chevrolet dealer.

Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois-off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Caution

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead until brake performance returns to normal.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 30 cm to the surface of

the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8.000 kPa can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Exterior Lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the hood and windscreen and below the front bumper.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Otherwise, the paintwork will dry out.

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois together with the window cleaner.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tires

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

302 Vehicle Care

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a Chevrolet dealer.

Underbody

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen/rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a Chevrolet dealer.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

Interior Care

Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel and trim, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Avoid wipe damp cloth on areas near of Front Seat power switch, because the liquid can compromise the Seat's working. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat fabric.

Remove dust from the instrument panel and door fabric with a vacuum cleaner. Remove stains with interior cleaner.

Plastic and Rubber Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and gasoline in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Service and Maintenance

General Information

General Information 303

Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance 303

Additional Required
Services 303

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 304

General Information

Special Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

Confirmations

The service registration filled out in the Owner Manual. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing Chevrolet dealer.

Make sure that the Owners Manual is completed correctly as continuous proof of service. It is essential if any warranty claim is needed.

Note

If the vehicle belongs to the exclusive program for fleets and / or car rental companies, see the booklet "Getting Specific Revisions to Fleet." For more information, contact an Authorized dealer.

Scheduled Maintenance

See the vehicle maintenance schedule booklet.

Additional Required Services

Extreme Operating Conditions

Extreme operating conditions take place when at least one of the following occurs frequently:

- Cold starts
- Stop and go
- Trailer towing
- Steep grades and/or high altitudes
- Poor road surfaces
- Sand and dust
- Extreme temperature variations

Police vehicles, taxis and driving school vehicles are also classified as operating under extreme conditions.

304 Service and Maintenance

Under extreme operating conditions, it may be necessary to have certain scheduled service work done more frequently than the scheduled intervals.

Seek technical advice on the servicing requirements depending on the specific operating conditions.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Only use products that have been tested and approved. Damage resulting from the use of non-approved materials will not be covered by the warranty.

Warning

Fluids and lubricants can be hazardous and can also be toxic. Handle with care and pay attention to the information given on the package.

Engine Oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures engine

cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Engine Oil Quality

Dexos 2 5W30 or API-C4 15W40—
Diesel engines

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on the proper oil specification and viscosity grade.

Use and ask for engine oils with the Dexos certification mark. Oils meeting the requirements of your vehicle should have the Dexos certification mark on the container. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved according to the Dexos specification.

Your vehicle was filled at the factory with Dexos approved engine oil.

Use only engine oil that is approved to the Dexos specification or an equivalent engine oil of the appropriate viscosity grade. Failure to use the recommended engine oil

or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If you are unsure whether your oil is approved to the Dexos specification, ask your service provider.

Use of substitute engine oils if Dexos is unavailable: In the event that Dexos approved engine oil is not available at an oil change or for maintaining proper oil level, you may use substitute engine oil of the qualities mentioned above. Use of oils that do not meet the Dexos specification, however, may result in reduced performance under certain circumstances.

Topping Up Engine Oil

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil (quality and viscosity).

If engine oil of the required quality is not available, a maximum of 1 liter of ACEA A3/B4 or A3/B3 grade may

be used (only once between each oil change). The viscosity should be of the correct rating.

Use of engine oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only A5/B5 quality is prohibited, since it can cause longterm engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Engine Oil Additives

The use of engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine Oil Viscosity

Grades SAE 5W-30 or 15W-40 is the best viscosity grade for your vehicle.

Cold temperature operation:

If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -20°C, an SAE 0W-30 oil should be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade be sure to always select an oil that meets the Dexos specification.

- From -20°C and below: 0W-30, 0W-40.
- From -20°C: 5W-30.

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures.

The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Coolant and Antifreeze

Use only silicate-free long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approximately -40 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

306 Service and Maintenance

Brake and Clutch Fluid

Only use DOT4 brake fluid.

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture, which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Brake fluid should be stored in a sealed container to avoid water absorption.

Ensure brake fluid does not become contaminated.

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Identification Plate 307

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 308
Vehicle Weight 311
Vehicle Dimensions 314
Capacities and
Specifications 325
Tire Pressure 326

Vehicle Identification

Identification Plate
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
The VIN locations are:

- Engraved on the right side frame.
- On VIN label, visible through the windshield left side.
- On Certification Label applied on left front door pillar.

308 Technical Data

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Sales Designation	2.5L FGT Diesel	2.5L VGT Diesel
Engine identifier code	DURAMAX	DURAMAX
Type	Longitudinal, in front of front axle	Longitudinal, in front of front axle
Number of cylinders	4 (in line)	4 (in line)
Piston displacement	2499 cm ³	2499 cm ³
Compression ratio	16,5:1	16,5:1
Firing sequence	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
Engine power	120 kw	132 kw
at rpm	3600	3600
Torque	380 N•m	440 N•m
at rpm	2000	2000
Idle speed (MT/AT) A/C on / A/C off	750 +/- 50 rpm — Diesel 4x2 900 +/- 50 rpm — Diesel 4x4	MT 750 +/- 50 rpm AT 740 +/- 50 rpm
Fuel type	Diesel	Diesel

Technical Data 309

Electrical System	2.5L FGT Diesel	2.5L VGT Diesel
Battery	12V 70 Ah	12V 70 Ah
Alternator	140 A	120 A

Engine	2.5L FGT Diesel 2.5L VGT Diesel	2.5L VGT Diesel
	(4x2) / (4x4) Manual Transmission	(4x2) / (4x4) Automatic Transmission
1st gear	4,02:1	4,06:1
2nd gear	2,21:1	2,37:1
3rd gear	1,46:1	1,55:1
4th gear	1,00:1	1,16:1
5th gear	0,76:1	0,85:1
6th gear	0,59:1	0,67:1
Reverse gear	3,63:1	3,20:1
Axle Ratio	3,73:1	3,42:1

310 Technical Data

Recommended Speeds for Gear Shifting

Hot and cold (MT - with pedal depressed to 1/4)	2.5L FGT Diesel
1st – 2nd	15 km/h
2nd – 3rd	35 km/h
3rd – 4th	50 km/h
4th – 5th	70 km/h
4th – 6th	100 km/h

Maximum Speed	
Single Cab / Crew Cab / Extended Cab 2.5L FGT Diesel / 2.5L VGT Diesel	180 km/h
Short Wheel Base	150 km/h

Brakes	
Type system	Hydraulic, parallel dual circuit brake system
Front	Floating caliper disc brake – ventilated disc
Rear	Drum brake system
Fluid	Heavy duty fluid DOT 4 ACDelco
Parking brake	Operative on rear service brake

Technical Data 311

Steering Geometry	Low Stance vehicles	High Stance vehicles
Camber	0° ± 30'	0° ± 30'
Caster	2°50' to 4°20'	2°35' to 4°05'
Toe-in resp.:	0° ± 15'	0° ± 15'
Turning circle diameter	12,30m	12,70m

Vehicle Weight

Single Cab – 2.5L FGT Diesel				
VEHICLE WEIGHT (kg)		Chassi Cab	Single Cab	Single Cab (SWB)
		(4x2)		
Gross axle load rating	Front	1,350		
	Rear	1,850		
Curb mass		1,578	1,744	1,745
Overall combined gross weight (trailer with brakes)		5,000		
Maximum towing mass with brake		2,500		
Payload		1,257	1,091	1,090

312 Technical Data

Extended Cab — 4 doors						
VEHICLE WEIGHT (kg)			2.5L FGT Diesel		2.5L VGT Diesel	
Stance			Low		High	
Trim Level			LS	LT	LT	LTZ
Gross axle load rating	MT	Front	1,350			
		Rear	1,850			
	AT	Front	-			1,350
		Rear	-			1,850
Curb mass		MT	1,780	1,804	1,872	1,911
		AT	-			1,916
Overall combined gross weight (trailer with brakes)		MT	5,000		6,000	
		AT	-			6,000
Maximum towing mass with brake		MT	2,500		3,500	
		AT	-			3,500
Payload		MT	1,055	1,031	1,048	1,039
		AT	-			1,034

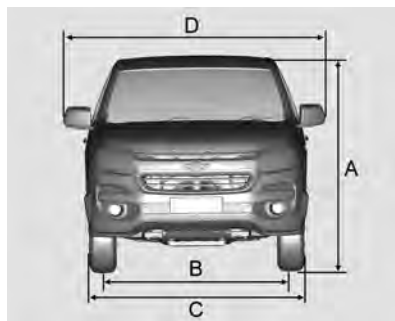
Technical Data 313

Crew Cab – 4 doors										
VEHICLE WEIGHT (kg)			2.5L FGT Diesel		2.5L VGT Diesel					
Stance			Low		High					
Transmission			4x2		4x2			4x4		
Trim Level			LS	LT	LT	LTZ	High Country	Storm / Midnight	High Country	Storm / Midnight
Gross axle load rating	MT	Front	1,350				-			
		Rear	1,850				-			
	AT	Front	-		1,350					
		Rear	-		1,850					
Curb mass		MT	1,828	1,859	1,903	1,950	-			
		AT	-		1,904	1,944	1,960		2,062	
Overall combined gross weight (trailer with brakes)		MT	5,000		6,000		-			
		AT	-		6,000					
Maximum towing mass with brake		MT	2,500		3,500		-			
		AT	-		3,500					
Payload		MT	1,007	976	1,047	1,020	-			
		AT	-		1,046	1,026	1,025		1,003	

314 Technical Data

Vehicle Dimensions

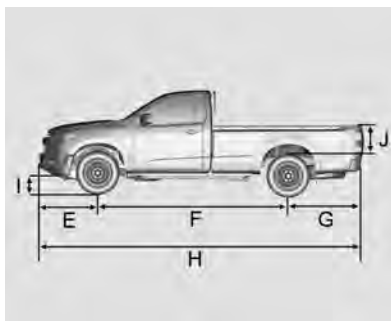
Regular Cab



Trim Level	Chassi Cab LS	Short wheel base LS	LS	LT	LS
Tire	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16C
Stance	Low				High
Transmission	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x4
A	1,706	1,701	1,694	1,701	1,783

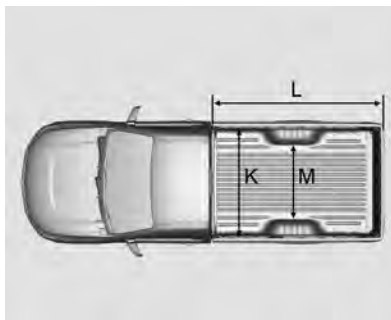
Technical Data 315

Trim Level	Chassi Cab LS	Short wheel base LS	LS	LT	LS
Tire	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16C
Stance	Low				High
Transmission	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x4
B	1,510				1,570
C	1,870	1,810			1,872
D	2,132				



316 Technical Data

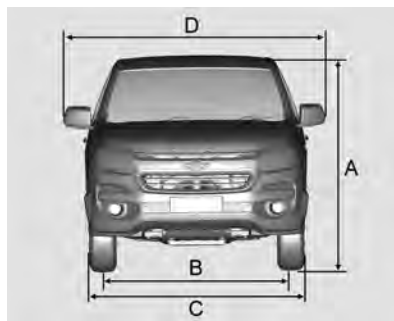
Trim Level	Chassi Cab LS	Short wheel base LS	LS	LT	LS
Tire	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16C
Stance	Low				High
Transmission	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x4
E	957				
F	3,096	2,845	3,096		
G	1,050 (without rear bumper)	1,182 (without rear bumper)	1,329		
H	5,103 (without rear bumper)	4,984 (without rear bumper)	5,381		
I	188	189	188	195	229
J	—	380	441		



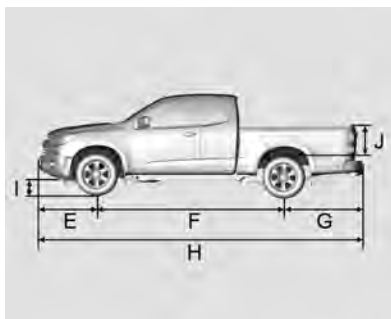
Trim Level	Chassi Cab LS	Short wheel base LS	LS	LT	LS
Tire	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16C
Stance	Low	Low	Low	Low	High
Transmission	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x4
K	—	1,670	1,534		
L	—	2,027	2,322		
M	—	—	1,122		

318 Technical Data

Extended Cab. All the dimensions are in millimeters.

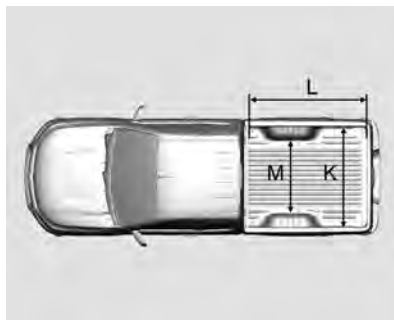


Trim Level	LS	LT	LT	LTZ
Tire	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16	265/60 R18
Stance	Low	Low	High	High
Transmission	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT / AT 4x2
A	1,696	1,702	1,793	1,803
B	1,510		1,570	
C	1,870			
D	2,132			



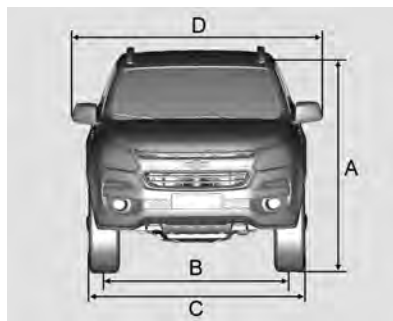
Trim Level	LS	LT	LT	LTZ
Tire	195/80 R15C	215/70 R16C	245/70 R16	265/60 R18
Stance	Low	Low	High	High
Transmission	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT / AT 4x2
E	957			
F	3,096			
G	1,309			
H	5,361			
I	190	195	229	238
J	441			

320 Technical Data



Trim Level	LS	LT	LT	LTZ
Tire	195/80 R15C	215/70 R16C	245/70 R16	265/60 R18
Stance	Low	Low	High	High
Transmission	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT 4x2	MT / AT 4x2
K	1,534			
L	1,790			
M	1,122			

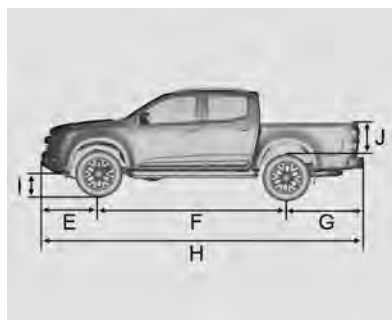
Crew Cab. All the dimensions are in millimeters.



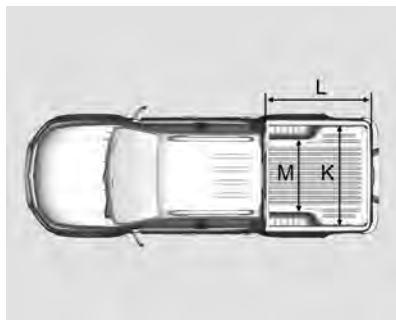
Trim Level	LS	LS / LT	LS / LT		LTZ		High Country	
Tire	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16		265/60 R18		265/60 R18	
Stance	Low		High					
Transmission	MT 4x2		MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4
A (Without roof rack)	1,697	1,704	1,795	1,791	1,806	1,800	1,804	1,797
A (With roof rack)	—	—	—	—	1,839	1833	1859	1852

322 Technical Data

Trim Level	LS	LS / LT	LS / LT		LTZ		High Country	
Tire	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16		265/60 R18		265/60 R18	
Stance	Low		High					
Transmission	MT 4x2		MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4
B	1,510		1,570					
C	1,870							
D	2,132							



Trim Level	LS	LS / LT	LS / LT		LTZ		High Country	
Tire	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16		265/60 R18		265/60 R18	
Stance	Low		High					
Transmission	MT 4x2		MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4
E	957						1,004 ¹	
F	3,096							
G	1,308							
H	5,361						5,408 ¹	
I	179	185	221	207	237	217	236	216
J	456						584	
(1) With Nudge Bar								



Trim Level	LS	LS / LT	LS / LT		LTZ		High Country	
Tire	195/80 R15 C	215/70 R16 C	245/70 R16		265/60 R18		265/60 R18	
Stance	Low		High					
Transmission	MT 4x2		MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4	MT / AT 4x2	MT / AT 4x4
K	1,534							
L	1,484							
M	1,122							

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	2.5L VGT Diesel	2.5L Diesel
For vehicles 4x2 / 4x4		
Engine Oil — Refilling with filter replacement	6,40 L	6,40 L
Engine Oil — Refilling without filter replacement	—	—
Fuel Tank — Nominal capacity	76 L	76 L
Engine — Cooling system with heater	9,0 L	9,0 L
Brake system	0,80 +/- 0,05 L	
Manual transmission	3,50 L	
Power steering system	1,50 L	
Refrigerant for air conditioning system	500 g	
Washer fluid reservoir for windshield	4,50 L	
Automatic transmission — Refill for gear box dismantled	10,60 L	—
Final drive — Rear	2,30 L	2,30 L
Wheel Nut Torque	140 N•m	
For vehicles 4x4		
Transfer Case 4x4 — Dexron VI	1.5 L	1.5 L
Final drive — Front	0,90 L	0,90 L

326 Technical Data

Tire Pressure

Tire Pressure

Tire	Tire pressure in load conditions PSI (kPa)					
	Up to 3 people (Light)		Up to 3 people (ECO)		Full load (Max)	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
195 R15C	43 (300)	43 (300)	43 (300)	43 (300)	52 (360)	65 (450)
215/70 R16C	37 (260)	37 (260)	37 (260)	37 (260)	42 (290)	54 (370)
245/70 R16 High Stance	35 (240)	35 (240)	35 (240)	35 (240)	38 (260)	44 (300)
245/70 R16 Low Stance	37 (240)	37 (240)	37 (240)	37 (240)	42 (260)	54 (300)
265/60 R18	35 (240)	35 (240)	35 (240)	35 (240)	38 (260)	44 (300)

Spare Tire Pressure

Tire	Tire pressure PSI (kPa)
195 R15C	65 (450)
215/70 R16C	65 (450)
245/70 R16	44 (300)
265/60 R18	44 (300)

328 Customer Information

**Customer
Information**

**Vehicle Data Recording and
Privacy**

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy	328
Cybersecurity	329

**Vehicle Data
Recording and
Privacy**

Event Data Recorders

The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated (e.g. engine speed, brake application, seat belt usage). To read this data, special equipment and access to the vehicle are required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced by a Chevrolet dealer. Some data is electronically fed into global diagnostic systems. The manufacturer will not access information about a crash event or share it with others except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee.
- In response to an official request of police or similar government office.
- As part of the manufacturer's defense in case of legal proceedings.
- As required by law.

In addition, the manufacturer may use the collected or received data:

- For the manufacturer's research needs.
- To make it available for research needs where appropriate confidentiality is maintained and need is shown.
- To share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with other organizations for research purposes.

Cybersecurity

GM collects information about the use of your vehicle including operational and safety related information. We collect this information to provide, evaluate, improve, and troubleshoot our products and services and to develop new products and services. The protection of vehicle electronics systems and customer data from unauthorized outside electronic access or control is important to GM. GM maintains appropriate security standards, practices, guidelines and controls aimed at defending the vehicle and the vehicle service ecosystem against unauthorized electronic access, detecting possible malicious activity in related networks, and responding to suspected cybersecurity incidents in a timely, coordinated and effective manner. Security incidents could impact your safety or compromise your private data. To minimize security risks, please do not connect your vehicle electronic systems to unauthorized devices or connect

your vehicle to any unknown or untrusted networks (such as Bluetooth, WIFI or similar technology). In the event you suspect any security incident impacting your data or the safe operation of your vehicle, please stop operating your vehicle and contact your dealer.

330 Index

Index

A	
Accessories and Modifications	253
Additional Required Services, Scheduled Maintenance	303
Adjustable Air Vents	200
Adjustments Seat, Initial Drive	27
Agreements Trademarks and License	143, 176
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine	259
Air Conditioning	195, 197
Air Conditioning Regular Operation	201
Air Intake	201
Airbag System How Does an Airbag Restrain?	40
What Makes an Airbag Inflate?	40
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?	40
When Should an Airbag Inflate?	39
Airbags Front	37
Airbags (cont'd) Light On-Off	73
On-Off Light	73
On-Off Switch	42
Safety Belt Tensioner Light	73
Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles	43
System Check	35
Alarm System Anti-theft	17
AM-FM Radio	104, 158, 181
Antenna Fixed Mast	106, 160
Anti-theft Alarm System	17
Alarm System Messages	85
Antilock Brake System (ABS) ...	226
Warning Light	76
Appearance Care Exterior	300
Interior	302
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto	138
Armrest Storage	55, 56
Audio Bluetooth	109
Theft-Deterrent Feature	152, 178

Automatic	
Light Control	92
Transmission	219
Transmission Fluid	259
Automatic Transmission	
Electronic Driving	
Programs	220
Fault	220
Interruption of Power	
Supply	220
Manual Mode	220
Selector Lever	219
Transmission Display	219
Auxiliary Devices	182
Auxiliary Devices	167
Auxiliary Jack	109
B	
Battery	264
Disconnect Switch	253
Jump Starting	293
Power Protection	97
Voltage and Charging	
Messages	83
Biodiesel	242
Blade Replacement, Wiper	265
Bleeding	
Diesel Fuel System	265

Bluetooth	188
Overview	131, 132, 136, 168, 169
Bluetooth Audio	109
Brakes	226, 263
Antilock	226
Assist	227
Brake and Clutch System	
Warning Light	75
Fluid	263
Parking	226
System Messages	83
Braking	207
Break-In, New Vehicle	214
Bulb Replacement	
Center High-Mounted	
Stoplamp (CHMSL)	270
Fog Lamps	268
Front Turn Signal Lamps	268
Headlamps	266
Instrument Panel	
Illumination	271
Interior Lamps	271
License Plate Lamps	270
Taillamps	269
Buzzers, Warning	82

C	
Camera, Rear Vision	237
Capacities and	
Specifications	325
Carbon Monoxide	
Engine Exhaust	218
Tailgate	15
Catalytic Converter	218
Caution, Danger, and Warning	4
Center High-Mounted	
Stoplamp (CHMSL)	270
Central Locking System	12
Charging System Light	74
Check	
Engine Light (Malfunction	
Indicator)	75
Child Restraint Installation	
Locations	46
Child Restraint Systems	
Top Tether	52
Child Restraints	
Installation Locations	46
ISOFIX	50
Systems	43
Cleaning	
Exterior Care	300
Interior Care	302

332 Index

Climate Control Systems	195	Cruise Control	230	Door (cont'd)	
Air Conditioning	195	Light	81	Rear Doors	14
Electronic	197	Messages	83	Driver Information	
Heating	195	Cupholders	54	Center (DIC)	81
Clock	68	Cybersecurity	329	Driving	
Compartment	56	D		Better Fuel Economy	203
Load	56	Danger, Warning, and Caution	4	Characteristics and	
Computer, Trip	88	Data Chart		Towing Tips	245
Control		Vehicle	2	Defensive	204
Hill Descent	229	Database Coverage		Electronic Programs	220
Control Indicators	70	Explanations	125	Environment	203
Control Light		Daytime Running		Hill and Mountain Roads	213
Hill Descent	77	Lamps (DRL)	93, 268	If the Vehicle is Stuck	214
Control of a Vehicle	204	Defensive Driving	204	Off-Road	209
Controls		Destination	117	Wet Roads	211
Steering Wheel	102, 154	Devices		E	
Convex Mirrors	19	Auxiliary	167, 182	Electrical System	
Coolant		Diesel Fuel Filter	264	Engine Compartment Fuse	
Engine	259	Diesel Fuel System Bleeding	265	Block	273
Engine Temperature Gauge	71	Dimensions		Fuses	271
Cooling	195, 197	Vehicle	314	Instrument Panel Fuse	
Cooling System		Displays		Block	275
Engine Messages	84	Automatic Transmission	219	Electronic Climate Control	
Courtesy Lamps	96	Door		System	197
Coverage Explanations	125	Ajar Messages	83	Electronic Driving Programs	220
Covers	95	Central Locking System	12	Electronic Stability Control	228
Misted Lamps	95	Manual Door Locks	11		
Wheel	286				

Index 333

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 78	F	Four-Wheel Drive 222
Electronic Stability Control Indicator Light 77	Fan	Four-Wheel-Drive Light 76
Engine	Engine 261	Front Airbag System 37
Air Cleaner/Filter 259	Fault, Automatic	Front Fog Lamp
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 75	Transmission 220	Light 80
Compartment Overview 257	Filter	Front Seat Position Seats
Coolant 259	Diesel Fuel 264	Adjustment 27
Coolant Temperature Gauge 71	Filter,	Front Seats
Cooling System Messages 84	Engine Air Cleaner 259	Adjustment 28
Exhaust 218	Fixed Air Vents 200	Front Turn Signal Lamps 268
Fan 261	Fixed Mast Antenna 106, 160	Fuel
Oil Messages 84	Flash-to-Pass 93	Additives 241
Oil Pressure Light 79	Flashers, Hazard Warning 94	Biodiesel 242
Overheating 260	Fluid	Diesel Engines 241
Starting 216	Automatic Transmission 259	Economy, Driving for Better ... 203
Engine Data 308	Brakes 263	Filling the Tank 243
Engines	Four-Wheel Drive	Gauge 70
Diesel Fuel 241	Transfer Case 222	Low Fuel Warning Light 80
Entry Lighting 97	Power Steering 262	System Messages 84
Equipment, Towing 249	Washer 263	Fuel for Diesel Engines 241
Exit Lighting 97	Fog Lamp Light, Rear 81	Fuses 271
Exterior Lamp Controls 91	Fog Lamps	Engine Compartment Fuse
	Bulb Replacement 268	Block 273
	Front 94	Instrument Panel Fuse
	Rear 95	Block 275
	Folding Mirrors 20	
	Forward Collision Alert	
	(FCA) System 232	

334 Index

G

Gauges

Engine Coolant Temperature	71
Fuel	70
Odometer	69
Speedometer	69
Tachometer	70
Trip Odometer	69
Turn Signal	71
Warning Lights and Indicators	69

General Information

Service and Maintenance	303
Towing	245

Global Positioning

System (GPS)	123
--------------	-----

Glove Box

	53
--	----

Guidance

Problems with the Route	124
-------------------------	-----

H

Hands-Free Phone

	173, 175
--	----------

Hazard Warning Flashers

	94
--	----

Head Restraints

	26
--	----

Headlamp Range Adjustment

	93
--	----

Headlamps

Automatic Light Control	92
Bulb Replacement	266

Headlamps (cont'd)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)	93, 268
Flash-to-Pass	93
High-Beam On Light	80
High/Low Beam Changer	92
Lamps On Reminder	81
Range Adjustment	93
Heated Rear Window	24
Heating	195, 197
High-Beam On Light	80
Hill and Mountain Roads	213
Hill Descent Control (HDC)	229
Hill Descent Control Light	77
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	227
Home Page	153
Hood	255
Horn	65
HVAC	195, 197

I

Identification Plate

	307
--	-----

If the System Needs Service

	124
--	-----

Ignition Positions

	214
--	-----

Immobilizer

Light	80
-------	----

Indicator

Vehicle Ahead	77
---------------	----

Indicators

Control	70
---------	----

Information on Loading the

Vehicle	59
---------	----

Infotainment

	152
--	-----

Instrument Panel

Storage Area	53
--------------	----

Instrument Panel Illumination

	271
--	-----

Instrument Panel Overview

	5, 63
--	-------

Interruption of Power Supply

	220
--	-----

Introduction

	3, 99, 177
--	------------

ISOFIX Child Restraint

Systems	50
---------	----

J

Jack

Auxiliary	109
-----------	-----

Jump Starting

	293
--	-----

K

Key and Lock Messages

	84
--	----

Keys

	7
--	---

L

Lamps

Courtesy	96
Daytime Running (DRL)	93, 268

Lamps (cont'd)	Lights (cont'd)	Lights (cont'd)
Exterior Controls91	Automatic Control92	Trailer Indicator81
Front Fog94	Brake and Clutch System75	Up-Shift76
Front Turn Signal268	Charging System74	Load Compartment56
Interior271	Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator)75	Loading the Vehicle59
License Plate270	Cruise Control81	Locks
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine)75	Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off78	Central Locking System12
Messages84	Engine Oil Pressure79	Lockout Protection14
Misted Covers95	Flash-to-Pass93	Manual Door11
On Reminder81	Fog Lamp, Rear81	Low Fuel Warning Light80
Reading96	Four-Wheel-Drive76	M
Rear Fog95	Front Fog Lamp80	Maintenance
Reversing95	High-Beam On80	Air Conditioning Regular Operation201
Taillamps269	Hill/Low Beam Changer92	Schedule, Additional Required Services303
Lane Departure Warning239	Hill Descent Control77	Maintenance Schedule
Lane Departure Warning Light ...77	Immobilizer80	Recommended Fluids and Lubricants304
Lifting the Vehicle, Tires253	Lane Departure Warning77	Scheduled Maintenance303
Lighting	Low Fuel Warning80	Transfer Case222
Entry97	Pre-Heat79	Malfunction Indicator Lamp75
Exit97	Safety Belt Reminders71	Manual Mirrors19
Illumination Control95	Tire Pressure Monitoring System79	Manual Mode220
Lights	Traction Control System (TCS)78	Manual Transmission221
Airbag and Safety Belt Tensioner73	Traction Control System (TCS) Warning78	Map Data Updates125
Airbag On-Off73		Maps115
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning76		

336 Index

Messages		Mirrors (cont'd)		Outside Temperature	67
Airbag System	85	Manual Rearview	21	Overheating, Engine	260
Anti-theft Alarm System	85	Power	19	Overrun Cut-Off	217
Battery Voltage and		Misted Lamp Covers	95	Overview	99, 152, 178
Charging	83	Monitor System, Tire		Instrument Panel	5, 63
Brake System	83	Pressure	280		
Door Ajar	83	N		P	
Engine Cooling System	84	Navigation		Parking	217
Engine Oil	84	Destination	117	Brake	226
Fuel System	84	Using the System	110	Over Things That Burn	218
Key and Lock	84	Navigation Symbols	115	Parking Assist	234
Lamp	84	New Vehicle Break-In	214	Personalization	187
Object Detection System	85	O		Phone	
Ride Control System	85	Object Detection System		Apple CarPlay and	
Steering System	86	Messages	85	Android Auto	138
Tire	86	Odometer	69	Bluetooth	131, 132, 136, 168, 169
Transmission	87	Trip	69	Hands-Free	173, 175
Vehicle	82	Off-Road	209	Port	
Vehicle Reminder	88	Driving	209	USB	106, 161
Vehicle Speed	88	Oil		Positioning	
Messaging		Engine	258	Vehicle	123
Text	137	Messages	84	Power	
Mirrors		Pressure Light	79	Mirrors	19
Automatic Dimming		Operation		Outlets	68
Rearview	21	Infotainment	155, 179	Protection, Battery	97
Convex	19	Outlets		Seat Adjustment	30
Folding	20	Power	68	Steering Fluid	262
Manual	19				

338 Index

Starting and Operating		Symbols	4	Tire Pressure Monitoring	
Overrun Cut-Off	217	Navigation	115	System Light	79
Starting the Engine	216	System		Tires	
Steering	208	Forward Collision		Designations	279
Fluid, Power	262	Alert (FCA)	232	Lifting the Vehicle	253
Wheel Adjustment	64	Global Positioning	123	Messages	86
Wheel Controls	65	Infotainment	152	Pressure	279
Steering System Messages	86	Roof Rack	58	Pressure Monitor Operation ..	282
Steering Wheel		T		Pressure Monitor System	280
Controls	102, 154	Tachometer	70	Rotation	285
Storage		Tailgate	15	Wheel Replacement	287
Load Compartment	56	Taillamps	269	When It Is Time for New	
Vehicle	254	Technical Data		Tires	285
Storage Areas		Tire Pressure	326	Tires and Wheels	279
Armrest	55, 56	Temperature		Tools	277
Glove Box	53	Outside	67	Top Tether Child Restraint	
Information on Loading the		Text Messaging	137	Systems	52
Vehicle	59	Theft-Deterrent Systems		Towing	
Instrument Panel	53	Immobilizer	18	Another Vehicle	299
Roof Rack System	58	Thermometer		Driving Characteristics	245
Sunglasses	55	Outside Temperature	67	Equipment	249
Underseat	55	Three-Point Safety Belt	33	General Information	245
Stuck Vehicle	214	Time	68	Trailer	248
Sun Visors	25	Tire and Wheels		Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ...	250
Sunglass Storage	55	Different Types	286	Vehicle	294
Switch, Battery Disconnect	253	Tire Pressure	326	Traction	
Switches				Control System (TCS)	227
Airbag On-Off	42				

Index 339

Traction (cont'd)	
Control System Warning	
Light	78
Traction Control System	
(TCS) Off Light	78
Trademarks and	
License Agreements	143, 176
Trailer	
Sway Control (TSC)	250
Towing	248
Trailer Indicator Light	81
Transfer Case	222
Transmission	
Automatic	219
Fluid, Automatic	259
Messages	87
Transmission Display	219
Tread Depth	284
Trip Computer	88
Trip Odometer	69
Turn and Lane-Change	
Signals	94
Turn Signal	71

U	
Underseat Storage	55
Up-Shift Light	76
Updates	
Map Data	125
USB Port	106, 161
Using the Navigation System	110
Using the System	103
Using This Manual	3
V	
Vehicle	
Control	204
Messages	82
Reminder Messages	88
Remote Start	8
Speed Messages	88
Towing	294
Towing Another Vehicle	299
Vehicle Ahead Indicator	77
Vehicle Care	
Tire Pressure	279
Vehicle Data Chart	2
Vehicle Data Recording and	
Privacy	328
Vehicle Dimensions	314
Vehicle Identification	
Plate	307

Vehicle Positioning	123
Vehicle Storage	254
Vehicle Weight	311
Ventilation	
Adjustable Air	200
Fixed Air Vents	200
Visors	25
Voice Recognition	125
W	
Warning	
Caution and Danger	4
Warning Buzzers	82
Warning Lights, Gauges, and	
Indicators	69
Warnings	
Hazard Flashers	94
Washer Fluid	263
Weights	
Vehicle	311
Wheel Covers	286
Wheels	
Replacement	287
Wheels and Tires	279
When It Is Time for New	
Tires	285
Windows	
Heated, Rear	24

340 Index

Windows (cont'd)	
Power	21
Windshield	
Wiper/Washer	66
Wiper Blade Replacement	265